

SERIES C - No. 10

KAPAU PEDAGOGICAL GRAMMAR

by

W. Oates

L. Oates



PACIFIC LINGUISTICS

The Australian National University

PACIFIC LINGUISTICS is published by the *Linguistic Circle of Canberra* and consists of four series:

SERIES A - OCCASIONAL PAPERS  
SERIES B - MONOGRAPHS  
SERIES C - BOOKS  
SERIES D - SPECIAL PUBLICATIONS.

EDITOR: S.A. Wurm. ASSOCIATE EDITORS: D.C. Laycock, C.L. Voorhoeve.

ALL CORRESPONDENCE concerning PACIFIC LINGUISTICS, including orders and subscriptions, should be addressed to:

The Secretary,  
PACIFIC LINGUISTICS,  
Department of Linguistics,  
School of Pacific Studies,  
The Australian National University,  
Box 4, P.O.,  
Canberra, A.C.T. 2600.  
Australia.

Copyright © The Authors.  
First published 1968.  
Reprinted 1971.

The editors are indebted to the Australian National University for help in the production of this series.

This publication was made possible by an initial grant from the Hunter Douglas Fund.

National Library of Australia Card number and ISBN 0 85883 062 0

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
<b>INTRODUCTORY MATERIAL</b>	
1. Compilation of Grammar	1
2. Nature of the Grammar	1
3. Explanation of Terms	3
4. Abbreviations and Symbols	4
5. General Remarks about Kapau Syntax	5
6. Morphophonemics	6
7. Orthography	7
<b>PART ONE: SIMPLE SENTENCES</b>	
1. Simple <i>ti</i> Sentences	11
2. Possessive <i>ti</i> Sentences	18
3. Simple Indicative Mood Sentences (non- <i>ti</i> )	22
4. Simple Indicative Mood Sentences ( <i>ti</i> )	31
5. The Verb Phrase: Noun-Verb Expression	36
6. The Verb Phrase: Verb-Verb Expression	41
7. Simple Transitive Verb Sentences	44
8. Simple Imperative Mood Sentences	47
9. Simple Adverbial Sentences	51
10. Interrogative Sentences	56
11. Negative and Contradictive Mood Sentences	60
12. Simple Clitic Sentences	65

	<i>Page</i>
13. Obvitative Mood	71
14. Particles	73
15. Simple Subjunctive Mood Sentences	78
16. Other Verb Constructions	80
<b>PART TWO: COMPLEX SENTENCES</b>	
<i>Introduction</i>	89
17. Same-Subject Participial Verb Sentences	90
18. Different-Subject Participial Verb Sentences	99
19. Complex Clitic Sentences	104
<b>PART THREE: COMPOUND SENTENCES</b>	
<i>Introduction</i>	111
20. Compound Sentences: Primary Verbs occurring Sentence Medially	112
21. Compound Sentences: '-Series Secondary Verb Sentences	115
22. Dubitative Mood Sentences	118
23. <i>y</i> - Tertiary Verbs	119
24. <i>he</i> - Tertiary Verbs	121
25. Quotatives	126
26. The Different Uses of Various Verb Constructions	128
<b>APPENDIXES</b>	
A. Supplementary Verb Conjugations	133
B. Noun and Verb Stems occurring in <i>N-Vx</i>	155
C. Nouns occurring with Variety of Verb Stems in <i>N-Vx</i>	161
D. Human Relationship Charts and Terms	162

	<i>Page</i>
E. Group Pronouns	166
F. Supplementary Information Concerning Certain Words	170
F.1. inä 'then; when; etc.'	170
F.2. nanga, manga	172
F.3. fi 'some' and fi 'feminine'	172
G. Various Idioms	174
H. Supplementary Sentences	176
I. Reflexive Pronouns	177
 <i>Special Note</i>	 177



## INTRODUCTION

### 1. COMPILATION OF GRAMMAR

This Grammar was compiled by members of the Summer Institute of Linguistics in response to an invitation from the Lutheran Mission to undertake linguistic studies in language spoken around Aseki. As the New Tribes Mission had spent several years studying the same dialect and as they also were desirous of technical linguistic assistance, it was agreed to work on the materials already gathered and make them available to all concerned when they were written up. It is based on a Grammar by Mr Charles Driver of the New Tribes Mission. Other members of the Mission, notably Mr and Mrs Tom Palmer and Mr Peter Banfield, who have a good speaking knowledge of the language, supplied the materials from which the Grammar was composed. Because the work has been done rapidly over a short space of time, much could not be checked with an informant. Thus, there are bound to be errors in spelling and inadequacies in analysis. However, it was felt better to cover as wide an area as was possible rather than reaching absolute certainty over a smaller area.

### 2. NATURE OF THE GRAMMAR

This Grammar is a pedagogical one, its aim being to present the grammatical structure in such a way as to facilitate rapid speaking ability in the dialect. The following procedure has been followed in the presentation of the material:

1. The aim has been to reveal the grammatical structure of Kapau in progressive stages, the simplest grammatical feature being dealt with first, then progressively more complex features.
2. Each chapter seeks to present just one grammatical feature so that the language learner will have only one major grammatical point to assimilate at a time.

3. Language learning is most successful if the language is learnt in actual conversational sentences. Consequently we have employed the syntactic approach and analysed the language in sentences. Each smaller 'chunk' is seen in relation to the whole meaningful utterance. It is little help knowing the conjugation of a verb. What must be known is the type of utterance in which it can be used.
4. There has been an attempt to list a number of examples of the particular sentence type under discussion at the end of each section, to assist in a speaking knowledge of the language.
5. Each illustration sentence contains only features already dealt with in the Grammar.
6. Parts of speech have been discussed from two angles:
  1. What 'spot' do they fill in the sentence and what other similar things fill that 'spot'; e.g. subject 'spot' noun 'spot'.
  2. What does the particular part of speech 'signal' grammatically, that is, what meaning does it carry apart from its lexical meaning?

A basic part of language learning is to master those aspects of a language which carry structural, functional or grammatical meaning, as distinct from learning just vocabulary. For instance, the following English sentence has only a vague meaning, though the meaning of each word is quite clear:

"Bird fly overhead." (Sentence 1)

To have meaning we must say something like one of the following:

'The bird is flying overhead.' (Sentence 2)

'A bird flies overhead.' (Sentence 3)

'Birds are flying overhead.' (Sentence 4)

The vital signalling units which give meaning to sentences 2-4 are:

The....is...ing (Sentence 2)

A.....s..... (Sentence 3)

....s...are...ing (Sentence 4)

The words that fill in Sentence 1 are those which carry a strong lexical meaning, a lesser grammatical meaning. These we are calling *Class* words. In Kapau we have four kinds of *CLASS* words:

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 1. NOUNS      | 3. VERBS   |
| 2. ADJECTIVES | 4. ADVERBS |

The words in Sentence 2-4 like 'the, is, are' we are calling FUNCTION words. In Kapau we have listed ten groups of them.

- A Verb Particles
- B Subject and 'Group Pronouns'
- C Possessive Pronouns
- D Object Pronouns
- E Modifier
- F Noun, Pronoun Ligature Words
- G Clause Ligature Words
- H Verbal Particles
- I 'qomä'
- J Exclamations

It is these (plus the suffixes and prefixes like 's' plural in English) that give Kapau its characteristic structure. These are what we are primarily concerned with in a Grammar because they carry the structural meaning of the language.

Once they are learned correctly, the speaker 'knows' Kapau, though of course, increasing vocabulary will increase the range of subjects the speaker may discuss.

### 3. EXPLANATION OF TERMS

'Root' is the term used to distinguish all forms which may occur as 'free' (that is, undeclined) forms. In Kapau this covers nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and particles. (All of these except particles may also, of course, take affixes, in which case the resultant form is composed of a root + non-root, as *hope'a-ma* 'concerning kakau').

'Stem' is the term used to distinguish the 'core' of a word which never occurs without affixes. In Kapau this includes all verb stems. For example, *-i-* 'do' never occurs alone. It must always be declined for person and/or tense and/or aspect, etc.

'Spot' refers to a syntactic position in the language which may be filled by one or more types of expression, either simple or complex.

'Expression' is used to refer to any word or group of words that express a noun, idea, verb idea, adjective idea, e.g.

*hampu* 'come here' is a verb expression;  
so is *wamnga qi'i* (noun root + verb) 'he is working'.

'Phrase' is used to refer to a group of two or more words that fall

together and are bound together to express a close knit idea; e.g.

amä'ä awa ti 'good man', where the noun is a centre of the phrase.

### Emphasis

Throughout the Grammar the following system of emphasizing in sentence illustrations has been followed:

1. all verb roots wherever they occur are in capitals;
2. the particular word or morpheme that the sentence is designed to illustrate is in capitals. If both features happen to concern the verb, then the illustrated word or morpheme is in capitals, and the verb root in lower case.

The initials of the various tense/aspect has been bracketed after each sentence.

### 4. ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

+	plus
-	minus
±	with or without
,	between morphemes means allomorphs
N.	noun
Adj.	Adjective
Pron.	Pronoun
Obj.	Object
Poss.Pron.	Possessive Pronoun
P.V.	Primary Verb
Int.	Intransitive
Trans.	Transitive
Subj.	Subject
V.P.	Verb Particle
0	Zero allomorph
Lit.	Literally
(I.F.)	Immediate Future
(P.C.)	Present Continuous

(P.1.)	Past Tense No.1
(P.S.)	Present Stative
(S.C.)	Stative Continuous
(D.P.)	Distant Past
(F.)	Future
(I.P.)	Immediate Past
(P.2.)	Past Tense No.2
(Hab.)	Habitulative
(D.P.Hab.)	Distant Past Habitulative
M.	Masculine
F.	Feminine
N-Vx	Noun-Verb Expression
V1-V2x	Verb-Verb Expression
(Imp.)	Imperative Mood
(F.Imp.)	Future Imperative
Adv.	Adverb
Inter.Adv.	Interrogative Adverb
Subj.	Subjunctive
S.T.	Sentence Type
Pt.V.	Particular Verb
V.A.V.	Repetitive Action Verb
Neg.	Negative
S.	Singular
Pl.	Plural
Act.	Active
Stat.	Stative
S.V.	Secondary Verb
T.V.	Tertiary Verb

##### 5. GENERAL REMARKS ABOUT KAPAU SYNTAX

Sentence order in Kapau as in most Highland languages is usually as follows: *Subj.* + *Obj.* + *Adv.* + *Verb.*

Subject and Object may consist of *N*, *N + Adj.*, *Pn*, *N. + PN*, or *N + N*. But this order is changed when one part of the sentence is emphasised; then the emphasised word, phrase or clause usually occurs sentence initially.

## 6. MORPHOPHONEMICS

No time has been spent on analysing the morphophonemics, which are complex. Below are a few tentative general rules about which morphophonemic changes observed in passing. Other changes have been noted in the text of the Grammar as they occur.

### (1) Loss of Vowel

There is a strong tendency for one vowel to be lost when two come together. It appears that if one of the vowels is *a*, that is the one that is lost, e.g.

*a* lost before *o*

fa'na 'road' + -on 'I, the one' is fa'non 'I am the way'.

*a* lost following *e*

oe- stem 'lie', -a 'he'; 'he lies', 3rd P. Stative is qoe, not qoea

But *a* is not lost following *i*. *i*- stem 'to do' since a *y* offglide from the *i* is written between. qiya 3rd P. Stative 'he' is in a state of doing.

\* And *a* is not lost before *u*; temo'angota 'when it arrives' + -u 'at that time' is temo'angotau

When two identical vowels come together, one is lost.

ni 'I' + -i Object marker is ni 'me'.

### (2) Vowel Harmony

na'a 'big' + -on 'the one' is no'on 'I am the big one.'

### (3) Back Sounds

*n* always becomes *ng* before *k* and *q*

mä'än + qa is mä'änqa 'I don't know'

Glottal sometimes becomes *q* following *ng*. It appears that sometimes *ng* becomes ' between homophonous vowels except when the morpheme is replicated: nuta + nga + nga becomes nuta'anga.

### (4) Nasals

When two identical nasals come together, one is lost:

ym 'below' + m 'out of sight' is ym 'below out of sight'

#### (5) Verb Prefixes

qa- + na- lose the vowel when prefixed to a stem beginning with a vowel.

- \* qa + oeäpa becomes qoeäpa 'He came down'
- \* na + itna becomes nitna 'You sg. will soon come down'

#### (6) Split Morphemes

Frequently the person morphemes -hi (2nd and 3rd P.Dual) and -hu (2nd and 3rd P.Plural) split, and h- occurs before the final vowel, so that both stem and person morphemes are discontinuous ones (this seems to occur mostly, but not exclusively in the Future and Immediate Future Tenses), e.g.

Stem: ka + -hi is k-h-a-i-na 'You two will ford water'  
 ka + -hu is k-h-a-u-na 'They two will ford water'

But this does not happen with hi- when the stem ends in i or with hu when the stem ends in u, because two homophonous vowels reduce to one.

Stem: w-, u- + -hi is Whina 'You two will go'  
 + -hu is hUna 'You all will go'

### 7. ORTHOGRAPHY

The following symbols have been used to represent the following sounds:

u	as 'oo' in 'boot'
ä	as 'a' in 'father'
a	as 'u' in 'hut'
ng	as the 'ng' in 'sing'
q	a very back 'k' sometimes with friction
'	for glottal stop
f	for 'f'
s	as the 'sh' in 'ship'
wh	for a voiceless 'w' in 'whale' of some English speakers
i	as 'ee' in 'beet'
e	as the 'a' in 'hate'
o	as the 'o' in 'note'
p	as the 'p' in 'spit' (unaspirated) becomes aspirated when followed by 'h'

- t, k also unaspirated becoming aspirated followed by 'h' *thuna*  
'*they all will speak*' Imm.Fut. The stops sometimes freely  
fluctuate to voiced stops.
- v, w, y Similar to English usage.  
'y' sometimes becomes frictionized to 'z' as in '*azure*'.
- m, n As in English
- h As in English

PART ONE:

S I M P L E   S E N T E N C E S



## 1. SIMPLE ti SENTENCES

### SENTENCE TYPE L. *Subject (Noun Phrase) + V.B. (ti)*

This sentence type consists of a subject, a noun phrase, which may consist of a noun, pronoun, or adjective, or any combination of these three parts of speech, plus *ti*. The adjectives never precede the noun that it qualifies, but other than that, the parts of speech that fill the subject spot may occur in any order. In all subsequent sentences, subject may be comprised as it is in this sentence type.

	SUBJECT		V. PARTICLES
N.	änga	ti	<i>It is a house.</i>
N. + Adj.	änga na'a	ti	<i>It is a big house.</i> <i>(The house is big.)</i>
Adj.	na'a	ti	<i>It is big.</i>
Pron.	ni	ti	<i>It is I.</i>
Pron. + Adj.	ni na'a	ti	<i>I am big.</i>
N. + Pron.	amä'ä ni	ti	<i>I am a man.</i>
	or ni amä'ä	ti	<i>I am a man.</i>
N. + Pron. + Adj.	ni amä'ä na'a	ti	<i>I am a big man.</i>
	or amä'ä na'a ni	ti	<i>I am the big man.</i>

#### 1.1. VERB PARTICLES (STRUCTURAL CLASS A)

*ti* is a verb particle which in the above construction carries verbal status. Though it is undeclined for tense, person, etc. it carries the meanings of the verb 'to be' in English: 'I am', 'it is', 'they are', etc., but its most frequent meaning is 'it is' or 'it exists that way'. Its position as sentence final establishes an important pattern in Kapau sentence structure, viz. that the main verb of a sentence is always sentence final. Future examples will show that *ti* usually occurs as a verb particle following a primary verb where it means Indicative Mood

and where in other moods it has other substitutable verb particles. In the above sentence 'spot', *ti* and a few other verb particles may occur.

## 1.2. NOUN CLASS (WORD CLASS 1)

Noun roots are numerically the biggest word class in Kapau. Words in this class are single-morpheme, free forms which in the above sentences occur in *subject* position in the sentence. Some examples of Kapau nouns are as follows:

hope'a	<i>kaukau</i>	qanāni	<i>older sister</i>
nanqa	<i>banana</i>	qanāpi	<i>younger sister (his)</i>
hamānga	<i>mareta</i>	* qanmqo	<i>his father</i>
hauka	<i>fruit</i>	amā'ä	<i>man, person</i>
qu'wa	<i>leaf</i>	ime'ä	<i>child</i>
iya	<i>tree, wood, pole, stick</i>	hempa	<i>hand, arm</i>
qova	<i>kunai</i>	yanga	<i>leg, foot</i>
haka	<i>bamboo</i>	hingo	<i>eye</i>
qatā'ä	<i>flower</i>	yāwa	<i>rib</i>
inga	<i>bird</i>	ānga	<i>house, village</i>
e'ä	<i>water</i>	fa'na	<i>trail, road</i>
ita	<i>food (cooked)</i>	qāmngä	<i>moon</i>
tiyā'ä	<i>sky</i>	* mapa	<i>sun</i>
qawa	<i>cloud</i>	wä	<i>light (phenomena)</i>
qoä	<i>ground</i>	ta	<i>firewood</i>
hipka	<i>ridge</i>	hive'ä	<i>dog</i>
yaqoe'a	<i>pig</i>	inkuma	<i>tin, container</i>
hiyamt*a	<i>cassowary</i>	wamnga	<i>garden</i>
sa'a	<i>possum, rodent</i>	hānga	<i>goods, cargo</i>
mataka	<i>rat</i>	pane'a	<i>talk, conversation</i>
āpaka	<i>woman, girl</i>	sā'ä	<i>sleep</i>
qanāi	<i>mother</i>	āp*a	<i>sing-sing, song, celebration</i>

Note: Kapau nouns end in a vowel, mostly -a. (A large percentage of Kapau words end in -a.)

### 1.2.1. SENTENCES

mataka ti	<i>It is a rat.</i>
qāmnga ti	<i>It is the moon.</i>
inga ti	<i>It is a bird.</i>

## 1.2.2. NOUN PLUS ATTRIBUTIVE NOUN

Sometimes two noun roots occur together, the second one an attributive noun to the first. The second noun acts as a type of qualifier of the first noun. Either noun may occur independently of the other.

NOUN	ATTRIBUTIVE	ti	
yoka	u'wa	ti	<i>It is a pitpit plant.</i>

## OTHER EXAMPLES:

yäqoe'a änga	ti	<i>It is a pig house.</i>
ime'ä äpaka	ti	<i>The child is a girl.</i>
ime'ä qoka	ti	<i>He is a boy (child).</i>

Frequently different kinds of a species or different parts of a larger whole (as a house) are differentiated by an attributive noun following the general noun, e.g.

änga = house		inga = bird	
änga qä'ä	<i>floor</i>	inga qätawa	<i>cockatoo</i>
änga tuwa	<i>(back) ridge pole</i>	inga käkäto	<i>hen</i>
änga smnga	<i>(wall) wall</i>	inga qapte'a	<i>kind of hawk</i>
änga qänga	<i>(walk) door</i>	inga äma	<i>bush fowl</i>
änga hingo	<i>(nose stick) rafter</i>		
iya = tree		kngo = sugar cane	
iya yanga	<i>(leg) tree trunk</i>	kngo mave'a	) <i>different</i>
iya qu'wa	<i>(leaf) leaf</i>	kngo mhä'na	) <i>varieties</i>
iya täta	<i>woodchips</i>	kngo navi'ya	) <i>sugar cane</i>
iya iwänga	<i>sawdust</i>		

## 1.3. ADJECTIVES (WORD CLASS 2)

Adjectives qualify Class 1 Words (Nouns). As far as our analysis has led us, they appear usually to consist of only one root, and usually follow the noun to which they are tied. Adjectives may occur with nouns in all positions in which they occur. The following are some of the common *single root adjectives*.

na'a	<i>big</i>	fi	<i>some, another</i>
awa	<i>good</i>	yanga	<i>strong</i>
ninqa	<i>many</i>	* qeta	<i>clean, tidy</i>
neäinqa	<i>light in weight</i>	qhouka	<i>tall, long</i>
koe'ä	<i>dry, i.e. not green</i>	mqa	<i>ripe</i>

wanqa	<i>small</i>	qainga	<i>different</i>
me'ä	<i>small</i>	hämnga	<i>soft, pliable, weak</i>
quyv'a	<i>bad</i>	pamka	<i>round</i>
hänga	<i>heavy</i>	phi'ya	<i>rotten</i>
yeä	<i>dry (not wet)</i>	awi'ya	<i>sweet</i>

### 1.3.1. SENTENCES

hava me'ä ti	<i>It is a small knife./The knife is small.</i>
nanqa fi ti	<i>They are another kind of banana.</i>
iya kuingo ti	<i>The tree is rotten./It is a rotten tree.</i>
matä'o qhouka ti	<i>He is a tall master.</i>
mqa ti	<i>It (fruit) is ripe.</i>
fa'na ktakta'va ti	<i>The trail is a zig-zag one.</i>
neäinqa ti	<i>The (pack) is light.</i>
* äpa hnanga ti	<i>The song is new.</i>

### 1.3.2. COMPLEX ADJECTIVES

The following adjectives appear to comprise more than one morpheme but the meaning of each part (inmost cases) has not been determined.

yangamaknqa	<i>strong</i>	papawaha'a	<i>black</i>
hä'aknga	<i>higher, upper</i>	namtanqa	<i>dark blue</i>
qoä'aknga	<i>lower</i>	miyomtanqa	<i>light blue</i>
mhaknga	<i>lower</i>	hauyainqa	<i>green</i>
äwaknga	<i>middle, central</i>	qunminqa	<i>many</i>
qapähe'a	<i>white</i>	tapango	<i>half-full (ta means measure)</i>
tifa'a	<i>black</i>		

### 1.3.3. SENTENCES

mpokisi hä'aknga ti	<i>It is the upper box.</i>
tiyä'ä namtanqa ti	<i>The sky is dark blue.</i>
hiwawä'ä qunminqa ti	<i>There are many ants.</i>
inkuma e'ä tapango ti	<i>The tin is half full (of water).</i>

### 1.3.4. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

These usually function like ordinary adjectives and follow the noun, but in a sentence such as *ta hope'a ti 'This is kaukau.'* where the emphasis is on the *'This'*, *ta* precedes the noun.

#### 1.3.4.1. Simple Demonstrative Adjectives

These are: ta, tita *this*  
                   a                   *that, it*

änga TITA awamanga ti   *This house is good.*  
 qoä tita nta ti           *This is your ground.*  
 TA inga ti                *This is a bird.*  
 wamnga a awa ti         *That garden is good.*

#### 1.3.4.2. Simple Demonstrative Adjectives suffixed by -nga

-nga suffix appears to give emphasis and to mean '*this or that thing I'm referring to*'.

                                  ta + nga becomes tanga  
                                   a + nga becomes anga

tanga yi ti                *This is an arrow.*  
 anga yi ti                *It's an arrow.*  
 anga mpuka ti            *This (that I'm speaking of) is a book.*  
 anga awa ti              *That's good.*  
 anga mpuka hamäta ti   *That book is red.*

#### 1.3.4.3. Complex Demonstrative Adjectives

These are composed of the demonstrative prefixes:

t-, ta *this, specific one*  
 h-, f- *some, one, a, indefinite one*

being prefixed to the personal pronouns particularly aqo '*he*', aqoä '*they*'.

taqo   *this particular 'he'*  
 faqo   *an unspecified 'he'*  
 fakoä   *some unspecified man*

#### 1.3.5. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES

##### 1.3.5.1. 'Qualify' Suffixes

There are two forms which appear to be sometimes suffixed to adjectives and at other times they appear to be an independent word (see Appendix A). They are:

-nanga   *partaking of the nature of, like*  
 -manga   *implying an emphasis on the quality of, may be translated by 'very'*

ya'ananga	<i>steep-like upwards</i> (ya'ana 'steep upwards' + -nanga)
imananga	<i>steep-like downwards</i> (imana 'steep downwards' + -nanga)
aqananga	<i>steep togetherness</i> (aqa 'together' + -nanga free translation 'permanently')
awananga	<i>of the nature of goodness</i> (awa 'good' + -nanga)
awamanga	<i>very good</i> (awa 'good' + -manga)
awa	<i>very clean</i> (*qeta 'clean' + -manga)

## 1.3.5.2. SENTENCES

- äkisi awamanga ti *It is a really good axe.*  
 \* änga qetamanga ti *The house is really clean.*

## 1.3.5.3. Measurement Suffixes

These are as follows:

- iwa *having to do with length.* Only one form of this has been found thus far: wanqalWA ti 'It's short in length' (wanqa 'small')
- pun Singular
- piyä'u Dual 'having to do with size, portion, amount, number, quantity, or pieces of a thing'
- piyä Plural
- pi

-pi seems to carry a prepositional idea meaning 'a small measure, amount, etc. OF, IN, ON a thing' but its meaning has not been fully established. Some feel it is just an alternative form of piyä. The above forms are suffixed to demonstratives and adjectives and the resultant form is always an adjective. Below is a chart of the various forms found to date. Only two examples of -piyä'u 'dual' have been noted, viz.:

- inkuma wanqapiyä'u ti *There are two small things.*  
 näi na'apiyä'u ti *There are two big knives.*

Dual forms are not included in the chart.

ADJECTIVE	-pu (S.)	-piyä (Pl.)	-pi (Prep.)
a <i>that</i>	aPU <i>that size, etc.</i>	taPIYÄ <i>these ones</i>	taPI <i>on, in this</i>
ta <i>this</i>	taPU <i>this size, etc.</i>		<i>small thing</i>
h- <i>some, one, a</i>	hmPU <i>some measure, section part</i>	haPIYÄ <i>some particular sizes</i>	hmPI

ADJECTIVE	-pu (S.)	-piyä (Pl.)	-pi (Prep.)
aqā all	aqāPU all the amount		aqāPI
quyv'a	quyv'aPU amount no good, size small	quyv'aPIYÄ no good, size small	
me'a	me'äPU small amount	me'äPIYÄ small pieces	
wāqā	wāqāPU	wāqāPIYÄ	wāqāPI in the small one

#### 1.3.5.4. SENTENCES

inga WANQÄPU ti	<i>It is a small bird.</i>
tanga ME'ÄPU ti	<i>The sickness is (only) a small one.</i>
ta ME'ÄPIYÄ ti	<i>This is a bunch of little ones.</i>
nti su'u HINQAPI ti	<i>You are short. (su'u means 'not able to reach')</i>

For other examples of these more forms in complex sentences see Appendix H.

#### 1.4. SUBJECT PRONOUNS (FREE FORMS. STRUCTURAL CLASS B)

Subject pronouns are an important word class in Kapau since subject pronominal suffixes on the verbs carry only a general and not very specific person meaning. Kapau in its pronouns distinguishes 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons, singular, dual, and plural - nine persons in all.

Subject Pronouns are as follows:

1S.	ni	I
2S.	nti	You
3S.	aqo, i	He, she
1DL.	yäi	We two
2DL.	qi	You two
3DL.	aqoä'u, isä'u	They two (male, female)
1PL.	nai	We all
2PL.	hai	You all
3PL.	aqoä, i'yoä	They all (male, female)

It will be noted that third person has a feminine form in each number.

## 1.4.1. SENTENCES

I apiyängi ti	<i>She is an old woman.</i>
AQOÄ amä'ä awa ti	<i>They are good men.</i>
ISA'U äpaka qhouka ti	<i>They two are tall women.</i>
QI ime'ä quyv'a ti	<i>You two are naughty children.</i>

## 1.4.2. PRONOUN + NOUN

It is usual in the type of construction under consideration for the pronoun to precede the noun. When it follows the noun it acts as a type of noun qualifier or attributive noun just as an adjective following the noun does. Plurality (not expressed by the nouns) may be expressed in this... -ime'ä aqoä ... *'the children'* (lit. *'child they'*).

## 1.4.3. SENTENCES

* ime'ä aqoä qiyäpi	<i>The two children are coming.</i>
apaki'yoä hope'a qani'ya	<i>The women are eating.</i>
hope'a taqoä'u nanma	<i>I'll eat these two kaukau.</i>

## 1.4.4. GROUP PRONOUNS (See Appendix E)

These fill the same 'spot' as do subject pronouns, and so also belong to Structural Class B.

## 2. POSSESSIVE ti SENTENCES

SENTENCE TYPE 1B. *Subject (Possessive Phrase) + ti*

The above is an extension of Sentence Type I.A. which includes as subject what has been termed *'The Possessive Phrase'*.

Possession may be expressed in any one of the forms listed below, any one of which may fill the subject 'spot' in the above sentence type.

## 2.1. POSSESSIVE PRONOUN PHRASE

*Subject (Poss.Pron. + N; N. ± Adj. + Poss.Pron.; + Attrib.N.) + ti*

Poss.Pron.	Noun	Noun	Adj. + Poss.Pron.
nqa	hope'a ti	hope'a	tanga nqa ti
	<i>It is my KAUKAU.</i>		<i>This is MY kaukau.</i>

The possessive pronoun phrase consists of a possessive pronoun either before or after the noun in the subject position. When the possessive pronoun occurs before the noun the emphasis is on the noun; when it occurs after the noun, the emphasis is on the pronoun, as indicated by the capitals in the examples above. The noun may also be qualified by an adjective in which case the possessive pronoun usually follows the noun-plus-adjective phrase, though it may precede it. An attributive noun may follow the possessive phrase as illustrated by the first sentence in 2.1.2.

### 2.1.1. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (STRUCTURAL CLASS C)

1S.	nqa	<i>My, mine</i>
2S.	* nta	<i>Your, yours</i>
3S.	aqoi'ya, qai'ya, i'ya, qai'ya	<i>His, hers, n.</i>
1DL.	ye'ä	<i>Our two, ours</i>
2DL.	qi'ya	<i>Your two, yours</i>
3DL.	aqoä'u'ya, isä'u'ya, qi'ya	<i>Their two, theirs</i>
1PL.	nai'ya	<i>Our, ours (P.)</i>
2PL.	hai'ya	<i>Your, yours (P.)</i>
3PL.	aqoäi'ya, i'yoäi'ya, qu'ya	<i>Their, theirs</i>
	to'oi'ya	<i>Whose?</i>
	haqoi'ya	<i>Some ones</i>

It will be noted that these forms are similar to the subject pronouns (with a few root changes) plus the addition (except in 1S. and 2S.) of the 'possessive' morpheme -i'ya or -'ya where the pronoun root already ends in an -i. The form haqoi'ya 'belonging to some (unspecified) one' also occurs.

### 2.1.2. SENTENCES

amä'ä AQOI'YA imäiyuka ti	<i>It's the man's hat.</i>
amä'ä HAQOI'YA imäiyuka ti	<i>It is someone's hat.</i>
hope'a na'a ta NTA ti	<i>This big kaukau is yours.</i>
OR	
* ta NTA hope'a na'a ti	<i>(emphasis on 'THIS' big...)</i>
hope'a a NQA ti	<i>That is my kaukau.</i>
QAI'YA ime'ä ti	<i>It is her child.</i>
mnga ta AQOÄI'YA ti	<i>There are their axes.</i>
daniel AQOI'YA yäqoe'a ti	<i>It is Daniel's pig.</i>

## 2.2. "sä'ä" PHRASE

Subj. ( $\pm$  N + Subj.Pron. + "sä'ä") + ti

## SUBJECT

Subj.Pron. + sä'ä ti

ni sä'ä ti *It's mine.*

This phrase carries the same meaning as the possessive pronoun phrase and may be substituted for it. It consists of a *subject pronoun* + "sä'ä" 'belonging to'. The subject pronoun may be preceded by a noun as in the first sentence in 2.2.2. below.

## 2.2.1. sa'a 'belonging to' (FUNCTIONAL CLASS B)

sä'ä is the only word in this class, i.e. no other word fills this 'spot' in the language. It only occurs tied to a subject pronoun which it always follows.

## 2.2.2. SENTENCES

kiapo aqo SÄ'Ä fa'na ktakta'va ti *The Kiap's (his) trail is zigzag.*

ta YÄI SÄ'Ä änga ti *This is the house belonging to us two.*

ta QI SÄ'Ä ita ti *This food belongs to you two.*

## 2.3. POSSESSIVE NOUN PHRASE

Subject (N + -i'ya) + ti

\* kiäpoi'ya iya ti *It is the Kiap's wood.*

A noun may show possession by the addition of -i'ya 'possessive' suffix. This phrase may also substitute for the possessive pronoun phrase as kiäpo aqoi'ya iya ti 'It is the Kiap's wood'.

## 2.3.1. SENTENCES

MATÄ'OI'YA hänga ti *It is the master's cargo.*

piya ta ÄPAKI'YA ti *Those nuts belong to the woman.*

## 2.4. RELATIONSHIP PHRASE

Subject (Poss.Pron. + Relationship Noun) + ti

## SUBJECT

Poss.Pron.	Rel.N.	ti	
** nta	tnmqo	ti	<i>He is your father.</i>

The possessive pronouns always occur with Kapau relationship terms.

## 2.4.1. RELATIONSHIP NOUNS

These nouns are the terms used for the kinds of relationship distinguished in this society. They consist of root plus personal possessive prefix.

## 2.4.1.1. Relationship Noun Roots

The following list is relationship terms:

(Note: All the forms listed below have 3rd Pers. Sing. masculine (-'o, o) or feminine (-i) suffixed to them)

* -nmqo	<i>father, father's brother</i>
* -mqo	<i>mother's brother, mother's sister's husband</i>
-näi	<i>mother, mother's sister, mother's brother's wife, father's brother's wife</i>
-wo'o	<i>grandfather's brother, grandfather, grandson, paternal father-in-law</i>
-äi	<i>grandmother, granddaughter, paternal mother-in-law</i>
-tä'o	<i>elder brother, male parallel cousins</i>
-näni	<i>elder sister, female parallel cousins</i>
-inkoä'o	<i>younger brother, male parallel cousins</i>
-näpi	<i>younger sister, female parallel cousins</i>
-tawä'o	<i>male cross cousins</i>
* -näinko	<i>maternal father-in-law (wife's father)</i>
-tiyavi	<i>female cross cousins</i>
* -näinku	<i>maternal mother-in-law (wife's mother)</i>
-impo'o	<i>sister's husband, wife's brother, brother-in-law</i>
-tiya'ui	<i>brother's wife</i>
* -näinko	<i>son-in-law</i>
* -iväko	<i>son, nephew</i>
-ime'ä	<i>daughter, niece</i>
* -iyänko	<i>husband</i>
-pai	<i>wife</i>

NOTE: -iyänko'o, -pai only with 3rd Pers. Sing. suffixes meaning 'her husband', 'his wife'. The use of 1st or 2nd Pers. implies the speaker is angry with wife or husband.

## 2.4.1.2. Relationship Prefixes

1S.Dl.Pl.	n-
2S.	t-, ti
Dl.	q-
Pl.	he-
3S.Dl.Pl.	qa-

These prefixes added to the roots, -näpi 'younger sister' and -nmqo 'father' give the following forms:

näpi, äpiko	my, our (Dl.Pl.)	younger sister, father
tnäpi, tunmqo	your (S.)	younger sister, father
qnäpi, qnmqo	your (Dl.)	
henäpi, henmqo	your (Pl.)	
qanäpi, qanmqo	his, her, their (Dl. and Pl.)	younger sister, father

NOTE: äpiko \* when not direct address;  
 äpiko when direct address.

## 3. SIMPLE INDICATIVE MOOD SENTENCES (non-ti)

## SENTENCE TYPE 2A. ±Obj.(N.) + P.V. (Int.)

This sentence type may or may not have a subject (noun or pronoun) and an object (noun), but it always has an intransitive primary verb. An intransitive verb is one which does not take object prefixes. Nouns in object position have the same form as nouns in subject position.

Subject	Int. Verb	
amä'ä	* qapi	A man is coming.

## 3.1. VERBS (Class 3 Words)

Verbs are by far the most important word class in Kapau as the multiplicity of their forms will demonstrate. Kapau verbs appear to distinguish three different ranks or 'grades' of importance according to the function of the verb part, the first rank having the most important function in Kapau sentences. This matter of 'rank' is distinguished in three verbal things:

1. Verb stems
2. Types of verb expressions
3. Types of verb clauses.

## 3.1.1. VERB STEMS

## (a) Simple and Complex Verb Stems

Verb stems may be simple (of one morpheme) or complex (of more than one morpheme).

## SIMPLE

p-	<i>come</i>	yäp	<i>come up</i>
		weäp-	<i>come down</i>
		quyäp-, 'uyäp-	<i>come inside, outside, through</i>
u-	<i>go</i>	qui, 'ui-	<i>go outside, inside, through</i>
i-	<i>go up</i>	ipä-	<i>go down</i>
tau	<i>cut down</i>	tawi-	<i>cut off</i>
mä-	<i>get (things)</i>	tmä-	<i>get (persons)</i>
ve-	<i>grow</i>		

(For fuller treatment of the more complex forms see Appendix C.)

## (b) Active and Stative Verb Stems

Kapau makes a clear-cut distinction between those stems that express the *action of doing* and those that express the *state of being*. This is the first clear-cut dichotomy (or two-fold distinction) to be noted in Kapau.

ACTION STEMS		STATIVE STEMS
Rank 1.	i- <i>do</i>	hai-, he- <i>be</i>
Rank 2.	u- <i>go</i> ) <i>and their</i>	we-, o- <i>lie, sleep</i>
	p- <i>come</i> ) <i>compounds</i>	pma-, pmeä <i>sit, live</i>
	t- <i>speak</i>	mt- <i>think, feel</i>
		( <i>from within</i> )
mä-	<i>get</i>	mä- <i>have (when used of a man</i>
		<i>having a wife)</i>

## OTHERS

ka-, ke-	<i>ford water</i>	* tau, to	<i>stand</i>
yamak-	<i>make, mix</i>		
uyät-	<i>let go of, loosen</i>	mak-	<i>love</i>
qat-, 'at-	<i>hold, grasp</i>	-i-	<i>hear (with qata ear)</i>
		qan, 'an-	<i>see, look</i>
mä'ät-	<i>catch</i>		
hai, he	<i>put</i>		
täp, wi	<i>give to a person</i>	(wi-	<i>occurs with 3rd P. Object)</i>

## (c) 'Rank' in Verb Stems

Of primary rank is the -i- 'do' stem and its stative counterpart, hai-, he- 'be'. These are of first importance because they carry such a heavy functional load. It is hardly possible to express any but the simplest sentence without using some verb form whose stem is either of these two.

Of secondary importance are verb stems as most of those listed above, which by themselves carry full verb status. Of tertiary importance are the above stems when they combine with a noun or another verb stem to express the verbal idea (to be elucidated later). It appears that a noun-verb expression seldom takes precedence over a straight verb expression (i.e. never occurs sentence final), if the latter is also present in the same sentence.

## (d) Morphophonemic Changes in Verb Stems

These are often complex and no easy rules can be formulated for many of the changes. It is recommended that the declensions be learnt by row rather than memorising the changes. It is suggested that the Imperative Stem, or the second person singular form of the Immediate Future Tense may be regarded as the basic form (see Appendix A).

The following types of verb stems have been noted:

(1) Almost regular - that is, a few changes in the stem, e.g.  
p- 'come', weäp- (see Appendix A.1). It has u in 2S.Imp.

(2) Stems beginning with q' which remains q initially and becomes glottal stop between vowels; e.g.

qi-, 'i 'strike', qan-, 'an- 'look', qat-, 'at 'hold'

ipka Qlma I'll hit it.

ipka na'lyatmnga ti I hit it.

hingo QAnma I'll look.

\* hingo na'anata ti He looked.

(3) Stems beginning with a semi-vowel which becomes y and w initially, and i and u when prefixed by a consonant, e.g.

i, y 'do'; iyäp, yäp 'come up'; iyamak, yamak 'make' (see Appendix 4.3.), u, w 'go' (see Appendix 4.4.)

aqo qi'i He's doing (it).

aqo yana He'll do (it).

aqo qiyäpi He's coming up.

aqo yäpana He'll come up.

aqo qu'wi      *He's going.*  
 aqo wana      *He'll go.*

(4) Fused stems, that is, stems whose two vowels at times fuse to one:

imau-	becomes	imo-	<i>fill with food</i>
tau-	"	to-	<i>cut trees</i>
hai-	"	he-	<i>put</i>
iya haTAU			<i>Cut the tree!</i>
iya qaTO'A			<i>I'm cutting the tree.</i>
pnqa HAI			<i>Put it away!</i>
pnqa qHE'A			<i>I'm putting it away.</i>

(5) Other vowels also change. In certain declensions, the final vowels of the stem change. Including those above the changes could be charted as follows:

a	becomes	e	ka-	<i>ford water</i>	(see A.2.)
ai	"	e	hai-	<i>put</i>	( " A.4.12.)
au	"	o	tau-	<i>cut down trees</i>	( " A.4.9.)
ä	"	eä	pmä-	<i>sit</i>	( " A.4.10.)
äi	"	eä	ngunäi-	<i>swallow</i>	( " A.4.7.)
äu	"	äv	huyäu-	<i>get up</i>	( " A.4.8.)
o	"	oe,we,wa	o-	<i>sleep</i>	( " A.4.13.)
oi	"	oe	'nhoi-	<i>finish</i>	( " A.4.14.)
ou	"	ov	'you-	<i>take off</i>	( " A.4.15.)
				<i>clothes</i>	

(See Appendix A.4. for paradigms showing changes.)

(6) t- 'speak' before vowels, h or ', or sometimes ti- before stops and pause, which would be 2S.Imm.Fut., 2S.Fut., 2S.Past, Pres.Cont. declension and the imperative. See A.4.1.

(7) ki before pause (Imp.2S.Past and k- elsewhere)

ki      "      k

(8) Stems ending in äu or ou, the u in some places becomes v. See A.4.8. and A.4.15.

(Information by Corinne Palmer.)

### 3.2. PRIMARY (OR SENTENCE FINAL) VERBS

Kapau, as other Highland languages, has a set of verbs which occur only in sentence final position. (Dr Wurm calls them 'sentence final

verb forms'.) Amongst the types of verb expressions these are of primary rank because:

1) they always occur sentence final (except in parenthetical sentences).

In Kapau things of most importance tend to occur more at the end of the sentence than at the beginning.

2) they express tense, aspect, subject and object persons and other types of verbal action as repetitive action.

3) they distinguish mood, either by a verb particle following the verb, or by a verb prefix.

4) in most cases of tenses they carry verb prefixes, usually *q* whose meaning has yet not been fully identified. (In some cases it appears to mean a completion of action.)

As far as we have been able to ascertain all verb stems may occur with all tense/aspects except that stative aspect occurs only on stative verb stems.

Note: the first two sections (except for the verb particle *ti*) dealt with words that fill the Subject position (nouns and associated words: pronouns and adjectives). This section and the next one deal with words that fill the predicate position, e.g. verb.

### 3.3. INDICATIVE MOOD

This mood is indicated by the presence or absence of the verb particle *ti* according to the tense and/or aspect of the verb. Indicative mood is the most commonly used mood since it is employed in the statement of facts (*ti* may be freely translated '*it is a fact that way*'). We have thus used this mood to distinguish the two following types of primary verbs:

- (1) those whose tense/aspect take *ti* and its substitutes.
- (2) those whose tense/aspect do not take *ti*.

We have thus called these two types of primary verbs the *ti* tense type and the non-*ti* tense type. This is the second dichotomy to be noted in Kapau. It will be seen as we proceed that the behaviour of *ti* tenses is quite different to that of the non-*ti* tenses.

### 3.4. NON-*ti* TYPE PRIMARY VERB TENSES

These verbs are those that take the following tense/aspect: Immediate Future, Present Continuous, No.1 Past Tense and The Stative Aspect.

## 3.4.1. IMMEDIATE FUTURE

This tense means immediate future time, up to twelve hours hence, usually within the one day, i.e. not from one evening into the next day, just from one morning to the end of that day.

This time tense consists of a verb stem, subject person suffix (which distinguishes Singular, Dual and Plural, 2nd and 3rd Dual and Plural being identical forms) + na 'Immediate Future'.

weäp-m-na *I will soon come down.*

## (a) Immediate Future Conjugation of weäp- 'come down'

1S.	weäpmna	<i>I will come soon.</i>
2S.	weäptna	<i>You will come soon.</i>
3S.	weäpana	<i>He will come soon.</i>
1DL.	weäpino	<i>We, two, will come soon.</i>
2,3DL.	weäphina	<i>You, they, two, will come soon.</i>
1PL.	weäpäno	<i>We all will come soon.</i>
2,3PL.	weäphuna	<i>You, they, all will come soon.</i>

## (b) Pronoun Suffixes

(m) series are as follows:

1S.	-m	<i>I</i>
2S.	-t	<i>You</i>
3S.	-a	<i>He, she</i>
1DL.	-i...o	<i>We two</i>
2,3DL.	-hi	<i>You, they two</i>
1PL.	-ä...o	<i>We all</i>
2,3PL.	-hu	<i>You, they all</i>

In first person dual and plural there is a discontinuous morpheme i...o, a...o, which is split by the -na morpheme which loses its vowel in conformity with the usual Kapau pattern: when two vowels, one of which is a, come together, the a tends to be lost. This is the first of three slightly different series of pronominal suffixes which we will call the (m) series (after 1st person singular morpheme). This series usually occurs with tenses that express future time or time close to the future (as Immediate Past), so it seems to signal future time as well as person.

## (c) n- Prefix

Immediate Future may sometimes take the n- verb prefix: noeäpmna 'I

*will very soon come down'*. The area of meaning of this prefix has not yet fully been determined, but it appears that when it occurs on primary verbs the n- prefix gives a sense of immediacy and may be translated '*JUST done*' or '*JUST about to be done*'. In the immediate Future tense the addition of n- prefix may mean a closer immediacy (say ten minutes hence) in comparison with a further immediacy (say four hours hence).

## (d) SENTENCES

ni Umna	<i>I will go soon.</i>
nti Ptna	<i>You will come soon.</i>
aqo YÄPana	<i>He will come up soon.</i>
yäi (ita) Nino	<i>We two will eat (food) soon.</i>
nai QUYÄPÄNO	<i>We all will come inside soon.</i>
aqoä'u QUYÄPHINA	<i>They two will come inside soon.</i>

## 3.4.2. PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

This tense carries the usual Present Continuous meaning: '*I am doing*', etc. An exceptional usage of this tense is that it is used for an act just completed (within a matter of minutes). For instance, someone has just arrived, maybe is sitting down talking, and someone will say about him, *ako qapi* (lit. *He's coming*). Present Continuous consists of a verb prefix q-, a stem, glottal stop, Present Continuous morpheme (hard to hear on stems ending in stops), and pronominal suffixes.

ni q-oeäp-a	<i>I come down-am-I</i>	<i>I am coming down.</i>
-------------	-------------------------	--------------------------

(a) Present Continuous Conjugation of weäp- '*come down*' and we- '*go down*'

* 1S.	qoeäpa	qoe'a	<i>I am coming, going down.</i>
* 2S.	qoeäpn	qoe'n	<i>You are coming, going down.</i>
* 3S.	qoeäpi	qoe'i	<i>He is coming, going down.</i>
* 1DL.	qoeäpo	qoe'o	<i>We two are coming, going down.</i>
* 2,3DL.	qoeäpi	qoe'i	<i>You, they two are coming, going down.</i>
* 1PL.	qoeäpo	qoe'o	<i>We all are coming, going down.</i>
* 2,3PL.	qoeäpa	qoe'a	<i>You, they all are coming, going down.</i>

## (b) Pronoun Suffixes

(n) series are as follows:

1S.	-a	<i>I</i>
2S.	-n	<i>You</i>

3S.	-i	<i>He, she</i>
1Pl.	-o	<i>We two</i>
2,3Pl.	-i	<i>You, they two</i>
1Pl.	-o	<i>We all</i>
2,3Pl.	-a	<i>You, they all</i>

It will be noted that these pronoun suffixes are a different series to the Immediate Future series. This series is named the (n) series after 2nd person, singular morpheme. It occurs (with the exception of Past Tense) with tense/aspects that indicate present time so these suffixes seem to indicate present time as well as personal pronoun.

(c) Verb Prefix q-

All except three tenses of the primary verbs carry the q- prefix. Its meaning has not yet been fully determined. The closest we have come to it thus far is that (except for the tense in question) it seems to indicate that the action is a complete act. Thus it will be necessary to learn by heart the occurrence of q- prefix.

(d) SENTENCES

* amä'ä QIYÄPI	<i>A man is coming up.</i>
amä'ä QOE'I	<i>A man is going down.</i>
amä'ä qaPU'wi	<i>A man is going by (level).</i>
amä'ä qapoe'i	<i>A man is going by (down).</i>
* amä'ä aqoä qaPa	<i>The men are coming.</i>
äpaki qapmeä'i	<i>A woman is sitting down.</i>
ime'ä (ita) qani'ya	<i>The children are eating (food).</i>
nai qi'yo	<i>We are going up.</i>
e'ä haväka qaPOE'i	<i>The flood water is flowing down.</i>
* piya qaPi	<i>The rain is coming.</i>

3.4.3. PAST TENSE NO.1. PRESENT STATIVE, PRESENT STATIVE CONTINUOUS ASPECTS

These three are dealt with here together because in either moods they function alike. They all take q prefix and (n) series pronoun suffixes.

	<i>Past Tense No.1</i>	<i>Present Stative</i>	<i>Present Stative Contin.</i>
	<i>I come down, etc.</i>	<i>I am lying down, etc.</i>	<i>I'm in the state of coming down.</i>
1S.	qoeäpmanga	qoenga	* qoeäpatonga
2S.	qoeäpmangn	qoengn	* qoeäpatongn
3S.	qoeäpma	qoe	* qoeäpato
1Dl.	qoeäpmango	qoengo	* qoeäpatongo
2,3Dl.	qoeäpmangi	qoengi	* qoeäpatongi
1Pl.	qoeäpmango	qoengo	* qoeäpatongo
2,3Pl.	qoeäpmanga	qoenga	* qoeäpatonga

#### 3.4.3.1. *Past Tense No.1*

nti q-oeäp-mang-n *You came down.*

-mang following the verb stem is the distinctive morpheme of this tense. There are two past tenses in Kapau (as well as an Immediate and a Distant Past) but the usage of these two forms has not yet been determined though both seem to refer to time between one and four days distant. No.1 Past is not used as frequently as No.2 Past which is the usual past tense form. It has been suggested No.1 Past may be Past Narrative but this has not been fully established. This tense has been heard to be used with a Present Continuous meaning (as children watching their mother in the process of coming to them). But this usage is rare.

#### 3.4.3.2. SENTENCES (S. + V.)

qi qaPmangi *You two came.*  
 hai qUmanga *You all went.*  
 qanäi QOEÄpma *His mother came.*

#### 3.4.3.3. *Present Stative*

aqöä'u q-oe-ng-i *They two are lying down.*

The -ng morpheme following the stem is the distinctive one in this conjugation. In form it is thus like the Present Continuous aspect that -ng substitutes for glottal stop. The Stative Aspect expresses a state of being such as sitting, which is distinctive from action of doing. It occurs only with Stative verb stems and -i 'do' verb stem which, although it is really an active stem, carries such an important place in Kapau structure, that it also occurs in the Stative Aspect. Kapau thus

distinguishes between the *action* of doing, and the *state* of being.

#### 3.4.3.4. SENTENCES (S. + V.)

- aqoä qaPMEÄNga    *They are living (in this place).*  
 \* ni qaTonga        *I am standing.*

#### 3.4.3.5. Stative Continuous Aspect

- \* nai q-oeäp-ato-ng-o    *We are in a state of coming down.*

This tense adds the morpheme -at\*o to active verb stems changing them from active into stative verbs. The tense is used whenever something which is usually an action becomes a state. Its usage will only be learnt by observing its occurrence in real language situations. It is difficult to put into words what Kapau regards as a 'state of being', but it is essential to understand the Kapau mind in this matter in order to be able to correctly use this and related aspect. For instance, actions which take place over a period of time, as singing, building, gardening, frequently occur in this tense when speaking of a person in the 'state' of performing one of these actions.

#### 3.4.3.6. SENTENCES

- \* nai änga qIYAMAKAtongo    *We (plural) are building a house.*  
 \*\* aqo äpa qaTato            *He is singing a song.*

### 4. SIMPLE INDICATIVE MOOD SENTENCES (ti)

SENTENCE TYPE 2B.    ± Subj. ± Obj. + P.V. (Int.) + V.P. (ti)

This sentence type is an extension of 2A., the only difference being that the intransitive primary verb is followed by a verb particle; in the case of Indicative Mood it is ti. (Note: all subsequent sentence types begin with ± Subject. It shall be taken for granted from this point that a subject may or may not be expressed according to whether it is self-evident or not.)

SUBJECT	VERB	VERB PARTICLE
nti	* pta	ti.

## 4.1. ti TYPE PRIMARY VERB TENSES

These comprise the remainder of the primary tense/aspects: Future, Immediate Past, Past No.2, Distant Past, Habituaive, Past Completed Habituaive, and Past Completed Stative Habituaive.

## 4.2. FUTURE TENSE AND IMMEDIATE PAST TENSE

These two tenses are considered together because they both take the (m) series pronoun and neither take q-, qa- prefix.

	Future Tense 'weäp'	Immediate Past Tense 'weäp'
	<i>I will come down, etc.</i>	<i>I have just come down, etc.</i>
1S.	weäpmqa ti	noeäpatmnga ti
* 2S.	weäpta ti	noeäpatnga ti
* 3S.	weäpata ti	* noeäpata ti
* 1DL.	weäpito ti	noeäpatä'ä ti
* 2,3DL.	weäphita ti	noeäphainga ti
* 1PL.	weäpäto ti	noeäpatä'ä ti
* 2,3PL.	weäphuta ti	noeäphaunga ti

## 4.2.1. FUTURE TENSE

aqo weäp-a-ta ti *He will come down.*

Future tense is indicated by -ta morpheme which substitutes for the -na of the Immediate Future. (qa in the case of 1S.) -ta also carries a future time meaning in other verb constructions. This tense may also take the n-, na- 'Immediacy' prefix.

Future tense more generally indicates future time; it concerns time later than twelve hours hence.

## 4.2.1.2. SENTENCES (S. + V.)

- \* aqo HUYÄVata ti *He'll get up.*
- \* yai WAito ti *We (DL.) will go down.*
- \* ime'ä napata ti *The child will come (immediately).*
- \* huta ti *They will go.*
- \* aqo NOEÄPata ti *He will come down soon.*

## 4.2.2. IMMEDIATE PAST TENSE

yäi n-oeäp-at-ä'ä ti *We two have just come down.*

The tense is distinguished by the fact that it always takes the n-

prefix, and the morpheme -at (meaning not known) which occurs between the stem and person suffixes. -nga alternating with a ä'ä seems to mean 'Immediate Past'.

Immediate Past occurs when speaking of an action which went on in the near past, e.g. something done this morning spoken of this afternoon. It usually refers to actions which have taken place within the past twelve hours.

#### 4.2.2.1. SENTENCES

nai ita naNatä'ä ti	<i>We just ate food.</i>
aqoä nUWhaunga ti	<i>They (Pl.) just went.</i>
hänga neäinqa piya na'iyata ti	<i>It rained on the light cargo.</i>

#### 4.3. PAST TIME ti TENSES

The remaining ti tenses (Past No.2 Distant Past, Habitative, Past Completed Habitative, Past Completed Stative Habitative) are like in the following details:

(1) they all indicate past time, expressly or by inference (e.g. Habitative aspect implies acts done in the past and continuing to be done).

(2) they all take a third series of pronoun suffixes (a) series, which series seems to mean past time as well as personal pronoun (as the other two series seems to mean also Future and Present time, respective).

(3) they all take q-, qa prefix.

##### 4.3.1. PAST TENSE No.2

q-oeäp-a ti	<i>He came down.</i>
q-i-'ya ti	<i>He did.</i>

This is the regular Past Tense. In form it is similar to the Present Continuous except it has the (a) series pronoun suffixes. As with the Present Continuous this tense has q-, qa- prefix, and what is apparently the tense morpheme, glottal stop (which is very lenis and hard to hear after verb stems ending in stops).

##### 4.3.1.1. Pronoun Suffixes (a) Series, are as follows:

1S.	-a	(-qa in the case of D.P. and Hab.)	<i>I</i>
2S.	-a	(knga in the case of Past No.2)	<i>You</i>
3S.	-a	(-qa in the case of D.P. and Hab.)	<i>He, she</i>

1Dl.	-o	(-qo in the case of D.P. and Hab.)	<i>We two</i>
2,3Dl.	-iya		<i>You, they two</i>
1Pl.	-o	(-qo in the case of D.P. and Hab.)	<i>We</i>
2,3Pl.	-uwa		<i>You, they.</i>

*Past Tense No.2 'weäp'*

* 1S.	qoeäpa ti	<i>I came down.</i>
2S.	qoeäpknga ti	<i>You came down.</i>
* 3S.	qoeäpa ti	<i>He came down.</i>
* 1Dl.	qoeäpo ti	<i>We two came down.</i>
* 2,3Dl.	qoeäpiya ti	<i>You, they came down.</i>
* 1Pl.	qoeäpo ti	<i>We all came down.</i>
* 2,3Pl.	qoeäpuwa ti	<i>You, they all came down.</i>

4.3.1.2. SENTENCES

* aqo qäpa ti	<i>He came yesterday.</i>
nai hope'a qä'No ti	<i>We (Pl.) ate sweet potatoes.</i>
i qi'ya ti	<i>She did it.</i>

4.3.2. DISTANT PAST HABITUATIVE

Both these conjugations have 1 and 3 Singular, 1 Dual and Plural person morphemes (-qa, -qo, -<sup>9</sup>a) which differ from these morphemes in the other tenses.

*Distant Past 'weäp'*

*I came down some time ago, etc.*

1S.	qoeäpanqa ti
2S.	qoeäpanga ti
3S.	qoeäpanqa ti
1Dl.	qoeäpanqo ti
2,3Dl.	qoeäpangiya ti
1Pl.	qoeäpanqo ti
2,3Pl.	qoeäpanguwa ti

*Habitulative 'weäp'*

*I am in the habit of coming down, etc.*

1S.	qoeäpmanqa ti
2S.	qoeäpmanga ti
3S.	qoeäpmanqa ti
1Dl.	qoeäpmanqo ti
2,3Dl.	qoeäpmangiya ti
1Pl.	qoeäpmanqo ti
2,3Pl.	qoeäpmanguwa ti

4.3.2.1. *Distant Past*

ni q-oeäp-ang-qa ti *It came down long time ago.*

The distinctive morpheme in this conjugation is -ang following the stem. Distant Past speaks of any time before or about four days ago.

## 4.3.2.2. SENTENCES

isä'u qu'wanangiya ti	<i>They (F.) saw it.</i>
ni qapmeänqa ti	<i>I sat down.</i>
aqoä iya qätawiyanguwa ti	<i>They (Pl.) cut the tree.</i>

## 4.3.2.3. Habituaive Tense

hai q-oeäp-mang-uwa ti	<i>You are always coming down.</i>
------------------------	------------------------------------

The habituaive morpheme appears to be a combination of -mang (same morpheme as for Past Tense No.1) and (a) series pronoun morpheme. Habituaive Aspect has to do with an action which is done habitually and may be translated by '*always*'. It is used to express actions which are done habitually as sleeping, working, etc.

## 4.3.2.4. SENTENCES

uka quyätmanqa ti	<i>He always unties the rope.</i>
sä'ä qomanqo ti	<i>We always sleep.</i>
aqoä qänga qumanguwa ti	<i>They always walk.</i>

## 4.3.3. PAST COMPLETED HABITUAIVE AND HABITUAIVE STATIVE

These are two tenses Past Tense counterparts of the Present Tense Stative and Stative Continuous.

<i>Past Completed Habituaive 'weäp'</i>	<i>Past Compl. Habituaive Stative 'weäp'</i>
<i>I used to come down, etc.</i>	<i>I always sleep, etc.</i>
* 1S. qoeäpä'na ti	qoetä'na ti
* 2S. qoeäpänga ti	qoetänga ti
* 3S. qoeäpä'na ti	qoetä'na ti
* 1DL. qoeäpä'no ti	qoetä'no ti
* 2,3DL. qoeäpängiya ti	qoetängiya ti
* 1PL. qoeäpä'no ti	qoetä'no ti
* 2,3PL. qoeäpänguwa ti	qoetänguwa ti

## 4.3.3.1. Past Completed Habituaive

qi q-oeäp-'ä-ng-iyä ti	<i>You two have always come down.</i>
------------------------	---------------------------------------

'-ä or 'ä'ä following the stem appears to carry the 'completed' meaning, and -ng appears to mean Past Habituaive in this construction.

## 4.3.3.2. SENTENCES

- \* nti änga qiyamakänga ti    *You used to build houses.*  
 \* aqo qa'uyäpä'na ti            *He used to come in.*

## 4.3.3.3. Past Completed Habitulative Stative

yäi q-iy-atä-'-n-o ti    *We used to be in the habit of doing.*

-atä is possibly an allomorph of the -ato 'to make Stative' (see Past Stative Continuous Tense), glottal possibly signals 'completed' in this construction, and -n or -ng, Past Habitulative.

## 4.3.3.4. SENTENCES

nai qapmetä'na ti    *We used to live (there).*

## 5. THE VERB PHRASE: NOUN-VERB EXPRESSION

The verb phrase consists of more than one word which may substitute for a single verb in a sentence. The verb centre (that which carries tense/aspect and person) is the basic unit of the verb phrase; the other word or words are subordinate to this centre. An example of this has already been seen where the particle 'ti' (Indicative Mood) is added to the verb centre in expressions as ni weäpmqa ti... 'I will come down'.

SENTENCE TYPE 3.    ± Subject + N-Vx

The above sentence type may have a subject occurring before the noun-verb expression.

## 5.1. NOUN-VERB EXPRESSION

SUBJECT    N-Vx

ni            wamnga qi'ya            *I am working. P.C.*

I            *garden am doing-I*

N-Vx is a very common one in Kapau. It consists of a noun plus a verb centre which together form the verb thought, as illustrated above. The *verb centre* may be any type of verb expression such as the primary verb form just discussed. The *noun* is not declined and it functions as

the object of the verb (as in the sentence above), except with nouns which have to do with the forces of nature, when the noun is the subject of the verb. The *N-Vx* is not a close-knit expression structurally as the noun can be separated from the verb by object, adverb and other things as future examples will show. But it close-knit semantically.

## 5.2. NOUN ROOTS WHICH OCCUR IN 'N-Vx'

### (a) Noun roots which occur elsewhere in other noun 'spots'

These comprise the majority of nouns in the *N-Vx* including all the nouns listed below for which a meaning has been given, except *mta* 'hunger', and *quno* 'thoughts'.

### 5.2.1. (b) Nouns which never occur except in a *N-Vx* construction

#### (1) Nouns which occur with a wide variety of verb stems

Only a very general meaning can be given for each of these verb stems.

#### 5.2.1.1. *ya* Noun Root which seems to indicate an action from a stationary position to movement

*ya* -pmä- sit down

*ya* \*-tau- stand up

Note: *ya* also means 'fear' and occurs with the following verb stems:  
*u* 'go'; *i*- 'do'; *in*- 'feel'.

#### 5.2.1.2. SENTENCES

*qi* YA PMhäina (I.F.)      *You two will sit down.*

*aqoä* YA qaPMEÄnga (P.S.)      *They are seated.*

#### 5.2.1.3. *ä* Noun Root attached to verbs dealing with handling and feeling

*ä* -imak-      *to hold with hot pad*

*ä* -mä'ät-      *catch*

*ä* -mai-      *feel with hand*

*ä* -mi-      *plait bamboo*

*ä* -qat-      *hold*

*ä* -tä-      *help a person*

*ä* -tau-      *count, read*

## 5.2.1.4. SENTENCES

haka Ä qäMI'ya ti I plaited bamboo.  
 aqo Ä qATO'i He is counting.

## 5.2.1.5. i Noun Root attached to verb stems dealing with washing

i -pa- wash  
 i -pe'wät- cleanse with water

## 5.2.1.6. SENTENCES

ni l qaPAni'ya I'm bathing.  
 hope'a l qape'wäti'ya I'm washing the kaukau.

## 5.2.1.7. ti Noun Root which indicates blackness or burning caused by fire

ti -mtäu- sugar cane split by sun  
 ti -kutmau- to cook by boiling  
 ti -okäwi to have a hole burnt through a bamboo (when being heated on fire)  
 ti -pt to break or split (when a bamboo is weak from being burned and breaks when dropped)  
 ti -he- to put something on the shelf above the fire; also to burn stumps of trees  
 ti -kaiyä -i- to throw a live insect (nango) on the fire (in order to roast and eat it)  
 ti -aita -i- to set kunai on fire (etc.) with a flare, going from one spot to another  
 ti -pakma -i- to scorch insects with a flare

Note: this noun may also occur in compound noun formations.

\* titäwa fireplace  
 tipiso'o shelf above the fire  
 tiväka smoke  
 tikäuka haze

## 5.2.1.8. The following four noun roots also occur with quite a wide variety of verb stems:

ta fire  
 ita food  
 mtnga breath  
 yänga gift

## 5.2.2. (2) Nouns which occur with i- 'do' stem only

mta	(hunger)	-i-	be hungry
* äpa	(sing-sing)	-i-	dance as at a sing-sing, circle as a plane or bird
tpe'a	(laughter)	-i-	be amused
qaingo		-i-	dislike
to'ä		-i-	show
qiyäfa	(joy)	-i-	praise
se'ä		-i-	happy
* yätanga		-i-	ask
qamta		-i-	1. do wrongly 2. not to recognise

## 5.3. VERB STEMS WHICH OCCUR IN 'N-Vx'

## 5.3.1. (a) i- 'do' stem

i- 'do' stem is by far the most common verb stem in N-Vx. Many of these forms expressed Kapau idiom (and it is wise to learn the phrase as entity). For example, many physical needs and attributes and the forces of nature are expressed in a N-i-Vx: *hunger, hearing, water in flood, wind* all 'do'.

mta qanl'i	I'm hungry (lit. 'the hunger is doing to me').
e'ä haväka q'l'i	The water is in flood.

These expressions which deal with the forces of nature, obviously occur only in 3rd person singular, e.g.

3S. inavä	(lightning)	-i-	to be lightning
ymnga	(wind)	-i-	to be windy
quymnga	(pus)	-i-	to ooze pus

With the -i- 'do' stem also occur some adjective roots which function the same way as the nouns do.

yea	(dry)	-i-	3S. to be drying (as clothes)
mqa	(ripe)	-i-	to ripen

## 5.3.1.1. SENTENCES

wamnga q'l'ya ti	She worked.
* qi wamnga qlyatongi	You (Dl.) are working.
qaka yeä q'l'i	The pants are drying.
aqoä'u se'ä nisainga ti	They (Dl.) were happy.

## 5.3.2. (b) Other verb stems which occur in N-Vx

- t-, ti-      to speak, utter: occurs with nouns which deal with uttering or making a noise and with nouns dealing with natural phenomena, or the emotions.
- |        |           |    |        |                |
|--------|-----------|----|--------|----------------|
| pane'a | (talk)    | t- | pane'a | to speak, talk |
| * wipa | (whistle) | t- | wipa   | to whistle     |
| * mapa | (sun)     |    | mapa   | sun to shine   |
| * äpa  | (song)    |    | äpa    | to sing        |
| hinko  | (thunder) |    | hinko  | thunder        |
- mt-, mti    to think (or utter from within): occurs with nouns dealing with that which proceeds from inside a person.
- |        |           |      |      |          |
|--------|-----------|------|------|----------|
| quno   | (thought) | -mt- | quno | to think |
| * qotä |           | -mt- | qotä | to vomit |
- in-            to feel
- |      |            |      |      |             |
|------|------------|------|------|-------------|
| quno | (thoughts) | -in- | quno | to remember |
|------|------------|------|------|-------------|
- qi-, 'i-      to hit, strike: occurs with nouns which have to do with striking.
- |          |                     |     |          |          |
|----------|---------------------|-----|----------|----------|
| ipka     | (stick for hitting) | qi- | ipka     | to hit   |
| tuwämnga | (mark, charcoal)    | qi- | tuwämnga | to write |
| piya     | (rain)              | qi- | piya     | to rain  |
- mau, mo-     to throw away, thrust away from
- |       |                 |      |       |                  |
|-------|-----------------|------|-------|------------------|
| mtnga | (breath, steam) | mau- | mtnga | to breathe       |
| hawa  | (stone)         | mau- | hawa  | to throw a stone |
- u-            go
- |       |                 |     |       |                 |
|-------|-----------------|-----|-------|-----------------|
| qänga | (door, walk)    | u-  | qänga | to walk         |
| ha'va | (sorrow, heart) | un- | ha'va | to be sorrowful |
- yamak-        to make
- |      |         |        |      |                |
|------|---------|--------|------|----------------|
| änga | (house) | yamak- | änga | to build house |
| mnga | (egg)   | yamak- | mnga | to beat eggs   |
- n-            eat, devour
- |     |        |    |     |         |
|-----|--------|----|-----|---------|
| ita | (food) | n- | ita | to eat  |
| ta  | (fire) | n- | ta  | to burn |

o-, we go down  
 sä'ä (sleep) we- sleep

### 5.3.2.1. SENTENCES

nai pane'a qaTI'yo (P.C.)	<i>We (Pl.) are talking.</i>
ni pane'a qatmanga	<i>I spoke (lit. 'talk uttered').</i>
* nai qata Yäto ti	<i>We'll listen (lit. 'ear will do').</i>
* hinko qaTI (P.C.)	<i>It is thundering (lit. 'thunder is uttering').</i>
* mapa qäTanqa ti (P.2)	<i>The sun shone.</i>
änga ta qä'na ti	<i>The house burned (lit. 'house fire consumed').</i>
ni sä'ä qoenga (P.S.)	<i>I'm sleeping.</i>
hai sä'ä qomanguwa ti	<i>You (Pl.) are always sleeping.</i>

## 6. THE VERB PHRASE: VERB-VERB EXPRESSION

### SENTENCE TYPE 4A. ± Subject + V1-V2x

This sentence type is also a common one in Kapau, though it is limited to two distinct types, both of which may or may not occur with subject expressed. This expression means 'intention of doing' or 'purposing to do'. The first expression what the purpose is, e.g. (so that) *I will eat... 'I'm coming'*. It will be remembered that Immediate Future is a non-ti, non q- prefix tense, e.g. Umna or nUmna 'I will go soon'.

### 6.1. TYPE 1. V.1. IMMEDIATE FUTURE; V2 -i- 'do', he 'be' STEM EXPRESSING INTENTION

SUBJECT	V.1. (I.F.)	V.2 (P.C.,I.P.,S.)	
ni	Umna	qi'ya (P.C.)	<i>I'm going (lit. 'I will go; I am going').</i>

#### 6.1.1. V.1. IMMEDIATE FUTURE

Any verb stem may occur in this position, meaning 'I will do; I will eat; I will hit; etc.' and expresses the action, that is to be performed in the near future.

6.1.2. V.2. i- 'do' STEM IN PRESENT CONTINUOUS AND IMMEDIATE PAST  
TENSES: he- 'be' STEM IN STATIVE ASPECT

The stem of the second verb of the construction is always i- 'do' stem, expressing action, or he- 'be' expressing state. (Another example of the action-stative dichotomy mentioned earlier.) If the action is past time the tense of V.2. is Immediate Past; if the action is present time, the tense of V.2. is present Continuous. If the verb expresses state the he- stem always occurs and in Stative Aspect, frequently 3.P.S. for qhe. These three tense/aspects are only ones that occur in this spot in the above construction.

6.1.3. THE MEANING OF THIS CONSTRUCTION is rather difficult to pin down though the broad meaning expresses the intention of performing the action of the Immediate Future Verb. Present Continuous seems to suggest *present intention* of doing; Immediate Past seems to express *past intention* of doing, and Stative carries seemingly some idea of certainty of accomplishment with it. The uses of these three will only be learned in 'live' language situations. The three sentences listed below all mean 'I will go'. The free translation is an attempt to differentiate the three.

umna qi'ya (P.C.)	<i>I will go - I'm doing or I'm planning to do.</i>
umna niyatmnga ti (I.P.)	<i>I had been going to go.</i>
umna qhe (S.)	<i>I will go for sure.</i>

6.1.4. SENTENCES

aqa NUTMEÄNA QU'WI	<i>He's gone to fetch him (lit. 'he will pick-him-up-en-route, he is going').</i>
nti NO'ITNA QHE	<i>You are going to fall off there.</i>
yä'ä NUMA QI'YA	<i>I'm going to go now.</i>
ha YMNA NIYATMNGA TI	<i>I had planned to do that.</i>
aqa WINO NIYATÄ'Ä TI	<i>We had planned to go together.</i>
anga YAMAKMNA QI'YA	<i>I'm going to build a house.</i>
sä'ä WAMNA QHE	<i>I'll go to sleep for sure.</i>
YMA NOEÄPATMNGA TI (I.P.)	<i>I came down to do it.</i>
mnga fi MÄMA QU'WA	<i>I'll go and get a knife.</i>

6.2. TYPE 2. V.1. IMMEDIATE FUTURE: V.2. p- 'come', u- 'go', t- 'speak' AND STATIVE STEMS EXPRESSING PURPOSE

SUBJECT	V.1. (I.F.)	V.2. (any tense)	
ni	ita Nmna (N-Vx)	qUwanqa ti (D.P.)	<i>I went to eat (for purpose of eating).</i>
ni	ita Nmna	qu'wa	<i>I am going to eat.</i>
ni	ita Nmna	qaTI'ya	<i>I'm speaking about eating.</i>
ni	ita Nmna	qaPa	<i>I'm coming to eat.</i>

#### 6.2.1. V.1. IMMEDIATE FUTURE

Again any verb stem expressing Immediate Future time may occur here.

#### 6.2.2. V.2. p- 'come', u- 'go', t- 'speak' AND STATIVE STEMS

An exhaustive analysis has not been made of the type of verb stems that occur in this spot, but from a superficial glance it appears that generally they are limited to what we might call 'motion' stems (i.e. those associated with coming and going), the t- 'speak' stem, and stative verb stems (pmä- 'sit', \*tau- 'stand', etc.). Unlike the other type expressing Intention, the tenses of the V.2. verb are not limited; any tense may occur in this position.

#### 6.2.3. MEANING OF THE CONSTRUCTION

It is to do with actions which are performed while planning to do something else, as '*I went (action performed) to eat*' (other action planned to be done). Or a purposing to do the action of the Immediate Future Verb.

#### 6.2.4. SENTENCES

* pane'a tino qapa	<i>I'm come that we might talk.</i>
ipka qä'imna qati'ya	<i>I'm speaking of hitting you.</i>
* äpa täno qapmeängo	<i>We're sitting here with the intention of singing.</i>
* mpa ino qu'wo ti	<i>We went to buy.</i>
e'ä suna qumanguwa ti	<i>They go to get water.</i>
matasn'a qatäpmna yäpmqa ti	<i>I'll come to give you medicine.</i>
iya tamna qu'wa	<i>I'm going to cut a tree.</i>

## 6.3. SUMMARY

	V.1.		V.2.	
	TENSE	STEM	TENSE	STEM
V-Vx (Intention)	I.F.	any stem	P.C. I.P. S.	i- i- he-
V-Vx (Purpose)	I.F.	any stem	any tense	u- p- t- Stative as pmä-

## 7. SIMPLE TRANSITIVE VERB SENTENCES

Brief mention has been made in discussing Sentences Type 2 and 3 of the object position, as filled by nouns. The following two sections focus more attention on the object position which may be filled by an adjective phrase (N. + Adj.), object pronouns, or indirect object (personal) nouns, as well as by nouns.

SENTENCE TYPE 2C. ± Subject ± Object ± Ind.Obj. + P.V. (Trans.)

Sentence Type 2C differs from 2A and 2B in that the primary verb is a transitive one; that is, it takes objective pronoun prefixes. It may also take a direct and/or indirect object (noun or objective pronoun in each case). Direct and indirect object may follow or precede each other.

SUBJECT	OBJECT	TRANS. VERB (N-Vx)	
± aqo	± ni	ipka qanQi'i	<i>He is hitting me.</i>

## 7.1. TRANSITIVE VERB STEMS

These are of two kinds:

(a) Those which are always transitive, i.e. never occur without object prefixes. Only the two following stems have been noted: täp-, wi- 'give'. (Note: the stem wi- occurs when the object is third person; the w- of the stem means third person object.)

The two following stems may be used intransitively, but most often they occur with object prefixes:

hingo (eye)	qan-, 'an-	(N-Vx)	see, look
qata (ear)	i-	(N-Vx)	hear

(b) Those which may sometimes occur as intransitive and sometimes as transitive, i.e. they may or may not take object prefixes. Some of these are listed below:

i-, y- do  
 qi-, 'i- strike  
 t-, ti- utter

## 7.2. OBJECT PRONOUN PREFIXES

(a) *Order*: They attach directly to the verb stem, so that if other verbal prefixes occur as well as object pronoun prefixes, the latter are joined to the stem first, then the other prefixes, such as q-, qa-, n-, na-.

SUBJECT	TRANSITIVE VERB (N-Vx)	
ni	ymnga qa-n-ti	<i>I am cold (lit. 'cold is</i>
I	<i>cold (pre-me-uttering</i>	<i>uttering on me').</i>
	<i>it is)</i>	

(b) *Objective Prefixes* are as follows:

1S.	n-, ng-	to, on me
2S.	qä-, ä-	" " you
3S.	u-, w-	" " him
1Dl.	eä-, e...ä	" " us two
2Dl.	qä'-, qä-, ä-	" " you two
3Dl.	u-, w-	" " they two
1Pl.	nä-	" " us all
2Pl.	he-	" " you all
3Pl.	u-, w-	" " they all

(c) *Rules of Occurrence* of the different objective prefix forms:

- 1S. ng- occurs before k- and q; n- elsewhere; qiyana 'He will soon hit' plus n- is nqiyana 'He will soon hit me'.
- 2S. a- occurs following q- prefix; qä- elsewhere. \*qati 'He speaks' plus -ä- is \*qäti 'He is speaking with you'.
- 3S.,Dl.Pl. u- occurs before stems beginning with a consonant; w- before stems beginning with a vowel.

- 1DL. e...ä occurs before q; eä- elsewhere; qiyana 'He will soon hit' plus e...ä is e'äyana. (qi- root changes to '...y).
- 2DL. qä- before stems beginning with q-; otherwise qä'- except ä- occurs following a verb prefix such as n- qiyana plus qä is qä'iyana 'He will soon hit you two'.

### 7.3. OBJECT PRONOUNS - STRUCTURAL CLASS D

1S.	ni	me
2S.	nti	you
3S.	aqoi, i	him, her
1DL.	yäi	us two
2DL.	qi	you two
3DL.	aqoä'ui, isä'ui	them two
1PL.	nai	us all
2PL.	hai	you all
3PL.	aqoäi, i'yoäi	them all (m. and f.)

These are free forms similar to the subject pronouns but distinguished from them: (1) by the different position in the sentence, they occupy (object position), and (2) by the addition of -i object person morpheme. This latter only becomes apparent in 3rd person singular, dual and plural (3S., 3DL., 3PL.) since all the other subject forms end in -i, and two homophonous vowels coming together always reduce to one.

### 7.4. SENTENCES

- \* mä'ä qaNTi (N-Vx) (P.C.)      *He is calling me.*
- \* aqo ymnga qUTi (P.C.)      *He is cold (lit. 'cold is uttering on him').*
- ni mta qani'i (P.C.)      *I am hungry (lit. 'hunger is doing to me').*
- aqo mta na'a qUwI'i (P.C.)      *He is very (big) hungry.*
- quno naNINata ti (N-Vx) (I.P.)      *I remembered (lit. 'thought did to me').*
- aqo qata ni qaNiya (P.S.)      *He is listening to me.*
- \* aqo aqoi ipka na'iyat\*a ti (I.P.)      *He hit him.*  
 (In this case the object prefix is u- lost when added to a stem beginning with '-.)
- aqo hingo qu'WANA (P.C.)      *He sees it.*

- \* aqo yānga qantäpi (P.C.)                    *He is giving it to me.*  
 (Note: yānga is a noun to do with giving by the hand and is usually associated with täp- 'give' verb stem.)
- nti hope'a AQOI wi                            *You give him some kaukau.*  
 aqo amä'ä ninqa aqoäi qu'watonqa  
 ti    *He bossed many men.*
- \* pane'a awi'ya naNätata ti                *He told us good (sweet) talk.*

### 7.5. INDIRECT OBJECT NOUNS

Only personal nouns (relationship terms and people) occur as indirect objects of a verb. They are suffixed by the object person morpheme, -i.

	SUBJECT	INDIRECT OBJ.	OBJECT	VERBS	
C o m p a r e	1. qaiyänk*o		hope'a	qaNI'i OR qa'ni	<i>The husband is eating kaukau.</i>
	2. äpaka	qaiyänk*ol	hope'a	quwi'i	<i>The woman is giving her husband kaukau.</i>

### 8. SIMPLE IMPERATIVE MOOD SENTENCES

- SENTENCE TYPE 5A.    ± Subj. ± Obj. + P.V. (Imp.Intrans.)  
 "                    "    5B.    ± Subj. ± Obj. + P.V. (Imp.Trans.)

This sentence type reveals the usual Kapau sentence structure: Subject, Object, Verb. Subject and Object both consist of Noun ± Adjective ± (Subject or Object) pronoun. Imperative Mood, like all other moods, occurs in primary (sentence final) verb. It distinguishes Intransitive verbs (which never take Objective prefixes) and Transitive verbs (which may take Objective prefixes).

#### 8.1. IMPERATIVE MOOD IN INTRANSITIVE VERBS

SUBJECT	OBJECT	P.V. (Imp.Mood;Intrans.)	
nti	qānga	haVI	<i>You open the door!</i>

Imperative Mood is signalled by h-, ha-, meaning Imperative, being prefixed to the verb stem, and in the case of 2nd person dual and plural (2Dl. and 2Pl.) -i is suffixed to the stem. There is no morpheme to indicate 1st person singular. Imperative Mood prefixes occur as follows:

ha- before consonants (except some h- initial stems). ha- + hu- or hi becomes hau- and hai the h of the stem metathasizing over the a of the prefix and the two h's reduce to one.

h- before vowels and w (in which latter case the w and h change positions with one another).

o- before h when followed by any vowel other than i or u.

STEM		Sing. Imp.	Dual and Plural Imp.
-tka-	to peel	hatkä	hatkäi
-mä-	to get	hamä	hamäi
-o-	to go down	ho	hoi
-i'yai-	to cook	hi'yai	hi'yai
-iyamaki	to build	hiyamaki	hiyamaki
-weäpu-	to come down	wheäpu	wheäpi
-hoe'äti	to pour	hoe'äti	hoe'äti
-hai-	to put	hai	hai
-huyäü-	to get up	hauyäu	hauyävi
-n-	to consume	han	hani

## 8.2. RULES CONCERNING STEM CHANGES IN IMPERATIVE MOOD

1. When ha- is prefixed to a stem beginning with q, the latter becomes glottal, e.g. -qi- (stem for 'to hit') plus ha- becomes ha'i (Imp.) '(You) hit!'.

2. When ha- is prefixed to the following stems -pu 'to come' and -pän- 'to put bark cape on', the stop of the stem is prenasalised and becomes -mpu and mpän.

hampu hampi You (S. and Pl.) come.

hampän hampäni You (S. and Pl.) put on your bark cape.

3. When the plural suffix -i is added to stems ending in u the latter becomes v: The Imp. Plural forms of -ktau 'to slice' and -ptau 'to obstruct' are haktavi and haptavi. An exception to the rule is -mau 'to throw' where the final u of the stem is lost giving the Imp. Plural form hamai 'You (Pl.) throw it'. The above two examples can also fluctuate to haktAI, haptAI.

4. When the plural suffix -i is added to stems ending in pu, then -i replaces the u of the stem.

STEM		Plural Imperative	
-pu	<i>to come</i>	hampi	<i>You (Pl.) come.</i>
-weäpu	<i>to come down</i>	hoeäpi	<i>You (Pl.) come down.</i>
-iyäpu	<i>to come up</i>	hiyäpi	<i>You (Pl.) come up.</i>

5. When the plural suffix *-i* is added to stems ending in *i* there is a loss of one *i* (Morphophonemic Rule (1.)). So *-ti-* (stem for utter) plus *ha...i* becomes *hati* '*You (Pl.) speak!*'.

6. Other stem irregularities:

STEM		Sing. Imp.	Dual and Plural Imp.
-pu-	<i>come by going level</i>	päu	päwi
-pi-	<i>come by going up</i>	pävi	pävi
-po-	<i>come by going down</i>	päwo	päwai

### 8.2.1. SENTENCES

hava haMÄ	<i>You (S.) get the knife!</i>
pane'a haTi	<i>You talk!</i>
änga haUYAPNÄI	<i>You (Pl.) demolish the house!</i>
ita haNi	<i>You (Dl.Pl.) eat!</i>
ita hakhai	<i>You (S.) serve the food!</i>
iya UYÄ'ÄTI	<i>Let go of the wood!</i>
qä haMI	<i>Put him in the bag!</i>
ä haMÄ'ÄTI	<i>Catch it!</i>

### 8.3. IMPERATIVE MOOD IN TRANSITIVE VERBS

OBJECT      P.V. (Imp.Mood; Trans.)

hope'a      NATÄPU      *Give us the kaukau!*

As noted previously most verb stems may be used:

- (a) intransitively, as above;
- (b) transitively by adding object person prefix.

In Imperative Mood object person prefixes replace the *h-*, *ha-*, Imp. prefix of the intransitive sentences. Both object prefixes and *ha-* prefix have been found in just a few forms, but these only are variations and may be purely dialectal, viz. *hanqi* '*Hit me!*'; *hanquti* '*Stick into me!*'; *hanMANTÄVI* '*Take it from me!*'.

The suffixes however function in the same way as for Intransitive verbs.

## 8.3.1. SENTENCES

pane'a uTi	<i>Talk to him!</i>
ni hingo nqan	<i>Look at me!</i>
nti ä uTÄ	<i>You give him a hand!</i>
aqoi qata Wl	<i>Hear him!</i>
aqoi yänga Wl	<i>Give it to him!</i>
hempä yänga nTÄPU	<i>Shake hands (lit. 'hand give me')!</i>

## 8.4. IMPERATIVE V1-V2x SENTENCES

The V1-V2x (Sentence Type 4) may also occur with V1 in the *Imm.Fut.* and V2 in the *Imp.*

OBJECT V1 (I.F.) - V2 (Imp.)

hope'a	mätna	hu	<i>Go get the kaukau!</i>
e'ä	yutna	hu	<i>Go get (draw) the water!</i>
ime'ä	mätna	hu	<i>Go get the child!</i>
		hu	<i>Go!</i>

## 8.5. FUTURE IMPERATIVES

In addition to the Imperative forms already given, there are others which are used concerning a command to be carried out in future time, and we might call these Future Imperatives.

However, these may be used on not only the 2nd person, but also in 1st and 3rd persons, although the 2nd person forms are the most common.

ym'mna *I must do it!*

## 8.5.1. FUTURE IMPERATIVE CONJUGATION OF i- 'do' STEM

1S.	ym'mna	<i>I must do.</i>
2S.	ya'atna	<i>You must do.</i>
3S.	yo'ona	<i>He must do.</i>
1Dl.	i'ino	<i>We two must do.</i>
2,3Dl.	i'hina	<i>You, they two must do.</i>
1Pl.	yo'äna	<i>We all must do.</i>
2,3Pl.	yu'huna	<i>You, they all must do.</i>

Note: the pronoun suffixes are the (m) future series with a few changes.

8.5.2. 2nd PERSON FUTURE IMPERATIVE FORMS OF OTHER VERBS  
(listed because they are most common)

ti- 'utter'

tau- 'cut'

- 2S. ta'atna You (S.) must say. to'otna You (S.) must cut (it).  
 2DL. ti'hina You (DL.) must say. to'hina You (DL.) must cut (it).  
 2PL. tu'huna You (PL.) must say. to'huna You (PL.) must cut (it).

pmä- 'sit down'

- 2S. pme'ätna You (S.) must sit down.  
 2DL. pme'ähina You (DL.) must sit down.  
 2PL. pme'ähuna You (PL.) must sit down.

tawi- 'cut across'

- 2S. tawi'yatna You (S.) must cut it across.  
 2DL. tawi'hina You (DL.) must cut it across.  
 2PL. tawi'huna You (PL.) must cut it across.

## 8.5.3. SENTENCES

- änkinä posi fi to'otna Tomorrow YOU WILL CUT some posts.  
 \* WEÄPUHUNA (weäphu'una) YOU ALL WILL COME DOWN.  
 nti pateä wäsi YA'ATNA YOU WILL WASH the dishes.

## 9. SIMPLE ADVERBIAL SENTENCES

- SENTENCE TYPE 6A. ± Subj. ± Obj. ± Modifier + Adverb + ti  
 " " 6B. ± Subj. ± Obj. ± Modifier + Adverb + P.V.

The next two sections deal chiefly with words that fill the adverb position, adverbs and adverbial phrases. Both occur immediately before the verb. Adverbs may be preceded by an adverb modifier. There are two types of adverbial sentences:

- (a) Adverb plus verb particle ti  
 (b) Adverb plus primary verb.

Both may or may not contain Subject, Object, and Adverb Modifier.

	SUBJECT	MODIFIER	ADVERB	V.P. or VERB	
*	yapa		quyv'a	ti	<i>Sulking is bad.</i>
	hope'a		tiya	qOE (S.)	<i>The kaukau is (lit. 'lying here').</i>
	haka	okä	quyv'a	qami'ya (P.C.)	<i>I'm plaiting it very badly.</i>

## 9.1. ADVERBS (WORD CLASS 4)

Adverbs are a large class of words which modify Class 3 words (verbs) and always precede the verb they modify.

They consist of three types:

(a) words which function as adjectives when bound to a noun but as adverbs when bound to a verb. They take exactly the same form as the adjective.

(b) words which only occur bound to a verb.

(c) interrogative adverbs (see 10.5.).

The following table illustrates the same word functioning both as adjective and adverb.

SUBJECT (Noun/Pn.+Adj.)	ADVERB	VERB	
iya HÄMNGA		ti	<i>It is soft wood.</i>
aqo	HÄMNGA	qi'i (P.C.)	<i>He is weak (lit. 'soft he is doing').</i>
iya NA'A		ti	<i>The tree is big.</i>
iya	NA'A	hatawi (Imp.)	<i>Cut off a big piece of wood!</i>
amä'ä QUYV'A		ti	<i>The man is no good.</i>
amä'ä	quyv'a	qi'i (P.C.)	<i>The man is doing badly.</i>

SUBJECT	OBJECT (N.+Adj.)	ADVERB	VERB	
ni	pane'a TAWAT*A		qaTl'ya	<i>I'm speaking the truth (true talk).</i>
ni	ta ninqa (or QOÄPA)	tawat*a	qaTl'ya	<i>I'm speaking truly.</i>
			qOE	<i>There is plenty of fire-wood.</i>
		qoäpa	pme'ätna	<i>Sit down for a long time.</i>

Frequently adverbs of place function as adjectives as the following sentences illustrate.

SUBJECT	OBJECT (N.+Adj.)	ADVERB	VERB	
yaqoe'a SO		na'a	ti	<i>The pig up there is big.</i>
	hava NTÄ		nmhäi	<i>Give me the knife over there.</i>
inkumä MHA	e'ä		qina	<i>The tin down there has water in it.</i>

## 9.1.1. SINGLE ROOT ADVERBS

There are only a few of these as far as our analysis has gone, but they are amongst the most commonly used adverbs. These are mostly adverbs of manner as:

awa	<i>well</i>	yä'ä	(time adv.) <i>actually, soon, right away</i>
yäko	<i>temporarily</i>	inä	<i>when</i>
* äta	<i>again</i>	tuwa	<i>later</i>
aqä	<i>together</i>	qäm	<i>first</i>
hna	<i>yet, still</i>	tiya	(place) <i>here</i>

## 9.1.1.1. SENTENCES

yä'ä na'a ti	<i>He's now big.</i>
ni yä'ä nOEÄPmqä ti	<i>I'll be coming right away.</i>
yä'ä hi (Imp.)	<i>Do it now!</i>
aqo YÄ'Ä nUWat#a ti	<i>He's actually gone.</i>
ita AWI'YA qli	<i>The food is sweet (lit. 'is doing sweetness').</i>
aqo YÄ'Ä qu'wa ti (P.2)	<i>He's already gone.</i>
YÄ'Ä nUma (I.F.)	<i>I'm going soon.</i>
a YÄ'Ä awa ti (Idiom)	<i>It is enough.</i>
YÄ'Ä qäpenqa ti (D.P.)	<i>He's dead already.</i>
** ATA nOEta ti (I.P.)	<i>He has just gone down again.</i>
yäi AQA Wino (I.F.)	<i>We will two go together.</i>
* HNA nOEta ti (I.P.)	<i>He's only just gone (lit. 'still just gone').</i>
awa qli (P.C.)	<i>He's doing it well.</i>
nti QÄM hu, ni TUWA pMna	<i>You go first, I'll come later!</i>
* ÄTA hmpu han (Imp.) (I.F.)	<i>Drink some more (lit. 'again').</i>
ÄTA ÄTA hi	<i>Do it again!</i>

## 9.1.2. ADVERB ROOT + PREFIX

ti- 'this' and f 'some', Demonstrative prefixes are the chief prefixes.

t-	+ inä	<i>later</i>	tinä	<i>now this time</i>
t-	+ e'a	<i>there</i>	te'a	<i>this here</i>
t-	+ a'i	<i>there</i>	ta'i	<i>here</i>
t-	+ am	<i>there</i>	tam	<i>in there</i>
f-	+ inä	<i>now</i>	finä	<i>sometime</i>
f-	+ inäinä		finähinä	<i>often</i>

## 9.1.3. ADVERB ROOT + SUFFIX

(a) Adverbs of place are suffixed by:

-i, -'i 'in sight' (-i occurs following consonants;  
 -i; " " vowels)

-m, -o 'out of sight' (-m occurs everywhere except following m  
 when two homophonous nasals reduce to  
 one)

	<i>Over there, etc.</i> 'in sight'	<i>Over there, etc.</i> 'out of sight'
nTä ( <i>over there</i> )	ntä'i	ntäm
mha ( <i>below</i> )	mha'i	mham
so ( <i>above</i> )	so'i	som
a ( <i>that</i> )	a'i	am
quwa ( <i>near</i> )	quwa'i	quwam
ymi ( <i>below</i> )	ymqi	ym
yämi ( <i>above</i> )	yämqi	yäm
yani ( <i>yonder</i> )	yanqi	yanm
hä'ä ( <i>above</i> )	hä'ä'i	hä'äm

(b) Adverbs of time are suffixed by -inä 'time, before, after, later, now'.

änkinä	<i>yesterday, tomorrow</i>
soinä	<i>day after tomorrow or day before yesterday</i>
ikopäinä	<i>time between dark and sunset</i>
äwinä	<i>time between sunrise and 10 a.m.</i>
* smtoinä	<i>time between 10 a.m. and 4 p.m.</i>
qa'afainä	<i>time between 4 p.m. and sunset</i>
sofiyau	<i>two days after tomorrow or before yesterday</i>
* hipinä	<i>time between sunset and dark</i>
äusainä	<i>time of full darkness</i>
quwafa	<i>close to</i>
yangäinä	<i>long time ago</i>
qamqaminqinä	<i>very many days, always</i>
iyä huyäinä	<i>just before dawn</i>

## 9.1.3.1. SENTENCES

ANUWA nUma qi'ya (V1-V2x) *I'm going today.*  
 piya INÄINÄ qä'Imanqa ti (Hab.) *It rains now and again.*

** kiyäpo änkinä temota ti (F.)	<i>The Kiap will arrive tomorrow.</i>
SOINÄ Umqa ti (F.)	<i>I'll go the day after tomorrow.</i>
ANKINÄ qhoä Täto ti (F.)	<i>We will converse tomorrow.</i>

#### 9.1.4. COMPOUND ROOT ADVERBS

##### (a) Noun Root plus Verb Expression

quno 'thought'	+ mäMT*a 'not utter'	= qunmämta	'quickly'
hanga 'play'	+ ml'ya 'not doing'	= hangami'ya	'quickly'
aqä 'with'	+ ml'ya 'not doing'	= aqami'ya	'gently, silently'
yanga 'strength'	+ maqna 'strong'	= yangamaqna	'strongly'

The last three words may consist of two words rather than one compound word.

##### (b) Noun or Adverb Root plus Noun Root, hintä 'side'

These two words together fill an adverb spot.

hima (nose)	hima hintä	in front
tuwa (back)	tuwa hintä	behind
qonä'ma (left)	qonä'ma hintä	left side
angä'ä (right)	angä'ä hintä	right side
yäm (above)	yäm hintä	above side

##### (c) Adverb Root plus Adverb Root plus Suffix

hä'ä 'above' + so 'above' + -i 'in sight'; hä'ä so'i 'way above in sight'

+ -m 'out of sight'; hä'ä som 'way above out of sight'

hawi + ym 'below' + o 'out of sight'; hawi ym 'below out of sight'

hawi + yäm 'above' + o 'out of sight'; hawi yäm 'above out of sight'

hawi + yani 'yonder' + -m 'out of sight'; hawi yanm 'yonder out of sight'

##### (d) Other Compound Roots

Most adverbs of manner (other than those already listed) appear to be compound roots but morphemes have not been specifically identified.

tutu'wa	walking noisily
* tawatä	truthfully
* atäta	untruthfully
quyv'a	badly

## 9.1.4.1. SENTENCES

- amä'ä TUTU'WA fa qU'wi (P.C.)    *The man is treading noisily (lit. 'with noise').*
- ta HANGAMI'YA hiKÄ (Imp.)    *Build the fire quickly!*
- \* pane'a TAWATA qaTI'ya    *I'm speaking truthfully.*
- wamnga yangamaqnä hi (Imp.)    *Work hard!*

## 9.2. ADVERBIAL AND ADJECTIVAL MODIFIER (STRUCTURAL CLASS E)

Only one word has been found in this class to date: okä 'very, really'. okä modifies both adverbs and adjectives which it always precedes.

- aqo OKÄ na'a ti    *He is very big.*
- \* amä'ä OKÄ qunmämta qU'wi    *The man is going really fast.*

## 9.3. ADVERB PLUS ADVERB

Sometimes two adverbs of close meaning are used to express the adverbial idea. The three examples of this all have similar meaning as indicated below.

- hä'ä (above) yäm (above)    up above
- hä'ä (above) so'i (above)    up above
- hä'ä (above) som (above)    up above

## 10. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

Interrogative sentences are of five different types:

1. Sentences Type 1A occurring with ti sentences.
2.    "        "    2B        "        "    ti tenses.
3.    "        "    2A        "        "    non-ti tenses.
4.    "        "    4A        "        "    V1, V2x.
5.    "        "    6         "        "    Interrogative Adverbs.

## 10.1. SIMPLE tä SENTENCES

SENTENCE TYPE 1A. Subject + V.P. (tä)

ta änga tä    *Is this a house?*

## 10.1.1. tä VERB PARTICLE

In the above construction tä functions similarly to ti in Sentence Type 1A except that tä means Interrogative where ti means Indicative.

tä thus substitutes for ti to form as Interrogative sentence, and so belongs to the same word class (Structural Class A).

### 10.1.2. SENTENCES

* wamnga ta nta tä	<i>Is this garden yours?</i>
* anga mpuka hamäta tä	<i>Is that book red?</i>
i apiyängi tä	<i>Is she an old woman?</i>
nqa hope'a tä	<i>Is it my kaukau?</i>
* kiäpoi'ya iya tä	<i>Is it the Kiap's wood?</i>

### 10.2. ti TENSE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

SENTENCE TYPE 2B. ± Obj. + P.V. + V.P. (tä)

In an Interrogative sentence the verb particle is tä 'Interrogative' which substitutes for the Indicative ti. A rising intonation signalling question also distinguishes these sentences from Indicative Sentences which have a falling intonation.

SUBJECT	P.V.	V.P.	
aqo	weäpat*a	ti	<i>He will come down.</i>
aqo	weäpat*a	tä	<i>Will he come down? (Compare)</i>

### 10.2.1. SENTENCES

* aqo änkinä qäPa tä	<i>Did he come yesterday?</i>
* nai soinä Wäto tä	<i>Are we all going the day after tomorrow?</i>
ita yä'ä naNhaunga tä	<i>Have you all eaten?</i>
ntinga ha qimanga tä	<i>Is that the way you do it?</i>
yesusu'o nti'na qäPEnqa tä	<i>Did Jesus die for you?</i>
nti ym'na Ut*a tä	<i>Are you going down there?</i>
nti pt*a tä	<i>Will you come?</i>

### 10.3. NON-ti TENSE INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES (SIGNALLING BY t- PREFIX)

SENTENCE TYPE 2A. ±Subj. ± Obj. + P.V.

Only P.C. Past No.1, Stative and Stative Continuous Tense/Aspect are included in the sentence type under discussion. It will be noted that as well as not taking the ti verb particle, these four have the following things in common:

- (1) they all take q- verb prefix;
- (2) they all take (n) present tense pronoun series.

To form the interrogative, these tenses lose the q- prefix and substitute t- interrogative prefix. They are thus the same sentence type as Indicative Mood sentences (2A) except that they also have rising Interrogative intonation.

SUBJECT	P.V.	
nti	qoeäp*n (P.C.)	<i>You are coming down.</i>
nti	toeäp*n (P.C.)	<i>Are you coming down?</i>

### 10.3.1. SENTENCES

mpuka nti ä TÄ'ätangn (S.)	<i>Is that a book you are holding?</i>
apu'na TÄnti'in (P.C.)	<i>Is that the part (of the sentence) you are talking to me about?</i>
nti wamnga TI'in (P.C.)	<i>Are you working?</i>

### 10.4. INTERROGATIVE V1-V2x SENTENCES

SENTENCE TYPE 4A. ± Subj. ± Obj. + V1-V2x

The Immediate Future is the other non-ti tense not included in 10.3. It forms the Interrogative by following the Immediate Future form with another verb which -

- (1) is always -i- 'do' stem;
- (2) is always present continuous tense;
- (3) is prefixed by t- 'Interrogative'.

This construction exactly parallels the V1-V2x of Section 4., except that it also has rising Interrogative intonation. It also frequently carries a question as to the *intention* of performing some action.

	V1	V2	
	weäpmna		<i>I will come down.</i>
Compare	weäpmna	ti'ya	<i>Shall I come down? (lit. 'I'll come down am I doing?').</i>

### 10.4.1. SENTENCES

pusi naVana ti'i	<i>Will he kill the cat?</i>
nutna ti'in	<i>Are you going? (lit. 'to go').</i>
änga YAMAKtna ti'in	<i>Are you going to build houses?</i>
* pane'a Tino täPn	<i>Are you coming that we might talk?</i>
* äpa Täno taPMEÄngo	<i>Are we sitting here with the intention of singing?</i>

iya TAUtna tU'un	Are you going to cut a tree?
ni ita sosapä'na wanqapi	Shall I cook food in the small saucepan?
YA'lma tI'ya	
ita aqa Näno tI'yo	Shall we eat together?

#### 10.5. INTERROGATIVE ADVERB SENTENCES

SENTENCE TYPE 6A. ± Subj. ± Obj. + Inter.Adv. + ti

" " 6B. ± Subj. ± Obj. + Inter.Adv. + P.V.

Interrogative Adverbs function the same way as other adverbs as illustrated in the following sentences:

nti wamnga quyv'a qi'in	You are working badly. (Statement)
nti wamnga PI'YA'MA i'in	Why are you working? (Question)

They thus belong to the same Word Class (4) as adverbs. In these sentences Interrogative is signalled by the Interrogative Adverb and loss of the verb prefix.

Inter.Adv.	VI	
pi'ya'ma	p*n (P.C.)	Why did you come?

##### 10.5.1. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS

These are as follows:

pi'ya	what?	to'oi'ya	whose?
pi'ya'ma	why (who)?	atita	how, how much?
äinä	when?	ä'i	where (in sight)?
to'o	who (S.)?	äm	where (out of sight)?
to'okä	who (Pl.)?	äi	which?

Note: 1) It is probable that ä- in äm, ä'i, äi, äinä means 'Interrogative'.

2) It will be noted that to'o 'who' may take the following suffixes to more exactly specify which 'who':

-kä	'plural' <sup>1</sup>
-i'ya	'possessive'

<sup>1</sup> -qä 'plural' also occurs on some relationship nouns to make them plural. The following have been noted:

\* äto 'my grandfather'; ätoKÄ 'my ancestors'  
 qainkoä'o 'his younger brother'; quinkokä 'his younger brothers'  
 tnäpi 'your younger sister'; tnäpkä 'your younger sisters'.

## 10.5.2. SENTENCES

* TO'O Pi (P.C.)	<i>Who is coming?</i>
* ÄINÄ WEÄPta ti (F.)	<i>When will you come down?</i>
ÄINÄ Utna I'in (I.F.:V-Vx)	<i>When are you going?</i>
ÄMNA U'un (P.C.)	<i>Where are you going?</i>
* nti PI'YA'MA WEÄPn (P.2.)	<i>Why did you come down?</i>
nti wamnga PI'YA'MA I'in (P.C.:N-Vx)	<i>Why are you working?</i>
ime'ä kngo PI'YA'MA qi'i (P.C.:N-Vx)	<i>Why is the child crying (lit. 'striking')?</i>
Ä'I WE (P.S.)	<i>Where is it (lying)?</i>
ta PI'YA WE (P.S.)	<i>What is this lying here?</i>
hänga to'o namä yäpana i'i (I.F.:V-Vx)	<i>Who is bringing the cargo up?</i>

## 10.5.3. INTERROGATIVE ADVERB PLUS ti

These sentences are an interrogative variety of Sentence Type 6A (± Subject + Adverb + ti).

AI ti	<i>Which is it?</i>
hope'a ta to'oi'ya ti	<i>Whose kaukau is that?</i>

## 10.6. ADVERB PLUS INTERROGATIVE ADVERB

If a sentence contains both adverb and interrogative adverb the adverb usually occurs just before the interrogative adverb which is always just before the verb.

* HANGAMI'YA TO'O Pi	<i>Who is that coming quickly?</i>
ipka QOÄPA TO'O QI'i	<i>Who is hitting it hard?</i>
qunmämta pi'ya'ma u'un	<i>Why are you going quickly?</i>
inkumä TAU e'ä PI'YA'MA yu'un	<i>Why are you drawing water in this tin?</i>
* AQAnanga ÄINÄ WEÄPta ti	<i>When are you coming down for good?</i>

## 11. NEGATIVE AND CONTRADICTIVE MOOD SENTENCES

Kapau distinguishes between negatives that are a straight negation of facts and those which contradict either a statement recently made or a mood of a speaker that is apparent. The latter are strictly response type utterances. In both cases there are two ways of expressing negation and contradiction.

## 11.1. NEGATIVE V1 + V2x

SENTENCE TYPE 4B. ± Subj. ± Obj. + Neg. V1-V2x + ti

SUBJECT V1 (Neg.) V2

aqoä moeäp\*a qi'ya (P.C.) *They are not coming down (lit. 'not coming down they are doing').*

This sentence type is an extension of Type 4A (V1-V2x) + the verb particle ti. In this construction V1 is a negative auxiliary verb and in V2 spot, any tense may occur. Thus, if a ti tense occurs in this construction, ti is expressed; if a non-ti tense, there is no ti.

## 11.1.1. V1 NEGATIVE AUXILIARY

The negative auxiliary verb carries the semantic meaning and the negation of the negative expression. It consists of prefix m- (before vowels), mä- or ma- (before consonants), -'a following all but -n. -qa follows -n.

Thus we can say that m...'a (and its varieties) signals Negative Mood.

Note: -'a has been postulated as part of the Negative Morpheme. It may possibly be the same morpheme as we have described elsewhere (16.2.) as a descriptivizer, and the negative may act as a type of adverb. We are calling the above construction a Negative Auxiliary because it is not the primary verb as far as function is concerned though it does carry the meaning of the Negative utterance. It can be translated freely as 'not coming', 'not doing', 'not eating', etc. This is another feature of Kapau; meaning is often carried by a form which is subordinate functionally, while the primary verb form carries the main verbal weight of the sentence.

## 11.1.2. V2 -i- 'do' STEM IN ANY TENSE/ASPECT

The stem V2 is always i- 'do' which may occur in anyone of its tenses or aspects. This V1-V2 is the usual way of expressing the negative in Kapau.

## 11.1.3. PRESENT CONTINUOUS NEGATIVE CONJUGATION OF -weäp 'come down'

1S. \* moeäpa qi'ya *I am not coming down.*

2S. \* moeäpa qi'in *You are not coming down.*

- 3S. \* moeäpa qi'i *He is not coming down.*  
 1Dl. \* moeäpa qi'yo *We two are not coming down.*  
 2,3Dl. \* moeäpa qi'i *You, they two are not coming down.*  
 1Pl. \* moeäpa qi'yo *We all are not coming down.*  
 2,3Pl. \* moeäpa qi'ya *You, they all are not coming down.*

#### 11.1.4. SENTENCES

- \* aqo mU'wa niYata ti (I.P.) *He didn't go.*  
 yäi mHE'ä qi'yo ti (P.2.) *We (Dl.) didn't put it.*  
 \* ni mäTa qi'ya (P.C.) *I'm not speaking.*

11.1.5. IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE SENTENCES are the same type as the above, consisting of *V1* negative auxiliary, and *V2* is the Imperative form of the 'do' verb hi.

Note the following Intransitive Verb sentences:

- \* MOEÄPA hi *Don't come down!*  
 mU'wa hi *Don't go!*  
 au maPMe'ä hi *Don't sit there!*  
 \* änga miYAMAKA hi *Don't build the house!*

and the following Transitive Verb sentences where the object pronoun, as well as the object prefix, occur:

- \* ni mänTa hi *Don't talk to me!*  
 \* ni manTÄPa hi *Don't give it to me!*  
 aqoi muwl'ya hi *Don't give it to him!*

#### 11.1.6. INTERROGATIVE NEGATIVE SENTENCES

Interrogative Negative sentences of types 1A, 2A and 2B, are formed as the positive sentences are formed, viz. *tä* substituting for *ti* in the *ti* tenses and *t-* prefix occurring in the non-*ti* tenses.

- \* aqo mU'wa niyata tä *Did he not go?*  
 \* aqo mäTa ti'i *Isn't he speaking?*  
 yäi mHE'ä qi'yo tä *Didn't we two put it there?*

In sentence type 6B the interrogative adverb occurs following the negative auxiliary and before the verb, i.e. it occurs in usual adverb position immediately before the verb.

- wamnga ml'ya PI'YA'MA. l'in *Why are you not working?*  
 \* aqoi muTa PI'YA'MA qi'iwa ti *Why did you (Pl.) not tell him?*

- \* äpa mäTa PI'YA'MA PMEÄNGN    *Why are you sitting there not singing?*  
 wamnga ml'ya äqo l'i                *Who is the one who is not working?*

### 11.1.7. CONTRACTION OF NEGATIVE FORMS

Sometimes in the future negative the two verbs of the negative expression are contracted into one form, comprising m- or mä- negative prefix, verb stem, and the tense and person endings usually carried by the i- 'do' stem, e.g. the usual form of 'I will not be (or receive) is mHE'ä lmqa, the contracted form is mhäimqa.

Other examples are as follows:

USUAL FORM	CONTRACTED FORM	
mU'wa lmqa	ni mUmqa ti	<i>I will not go.</i>
ml'ya lmqa	ni mImqa ti	<i>I will not do it.</i>
** mame'ä hiuta	aqoä maMhÄuta ti	<i>They will not get it.</i>

### 11.2. NEGATIVE ti SENTENCES

This is an extension of Sentence Type I where ti is the head of the construction. It consists of the negative auxiliary followed not by a form of the i- 'do' verb but by ti.

SUBJECT	ADVERB	NEG. AUX.	ti	
aqo	hna	moeäp*a	ti	<i>He is still not come down.</i>

It is difficult to analyse the difference between the above sentence and the Negative V1-V2x Sentence (which is the usual way of forming the negative in Kapau). But it seems that the above occurs when the thought expressed is that of a present fact. The other construction seems to express rather the action of 'not doing'. Compare the above sentence with: aqo moeäpa qi'ya ti (P.2.) 'He did not come down'. The first could be freely translated 'He's still not come it is a fact', and the second, 'He not come, he did'. Only hearing each used in real language situations will teach the difference.

#### 11.2.1. SENTENCES

- \* hna pata mi'ya ti    *It is still undone.*  
 ni mnga mhe'ä ti    *I don't have a knife.*

## 11.3. SIMPLE mä SENTENCES

## SENTENCE TYPE 1A

SUBJECT   mä  
 iya       mä    (No) it's not a tree!

## 11.3.1. mä VERB PARTICLE

mä 'contradictive' verb particle (Structural Class A) may occur with a noun, pronoun, adjective (or combination of these) as ti can. Very frequently mä utterances occur in sentences like the following where the contradictive statement is followed by an indicative statement.

Noun           anga hope'a MÄ, päta te ti   *That's not kaukau, it's potato.*  
 Poss.Pron.   a qoi'ya mä, nqa ti       *It's not his; it's mine.*  
 \*\* Adj.       hiviyata mä, hamäta ti   *It's not yellow; it's red.*

## 11.4. ti TENSE CONTRADICTIVE SENTENCES

## SENTENCE TYPE 2B

In these sentences mä contradictive verb particle substitutes for the Indicative ti. The mä particle almost always occurs in response utterances and so signals a contradiction of the previous statement.

## 11.4.1. SENTENCES

änga tita awamanga MÄ                                   *(No) this house is not good.*  
 \* aqo nUwata mä, ni nUwatmnga ti (I.P.)   *He didn't go; I did.*

Compare the same sentence expressed negatively:

aqo mU'wa niyata ti, ni nUwatmnga ti   *He didn't go; I went.*

## 11.5. NON-ti TENSE CONTRADICTIVE SENTENCES

## SENTENCE TYPE 2A

These sentences are like 2A except that m- 'contradictive' prefix replaces the q- prefix, of the non-ti tenses.

SUBJECT   P.V.  
 Compare   ni       mäti'ya (P.C.)   *I'm not telling you (not talk you-am)*  
           ni       qati'ya       *I'm speaking to you.*

This often occurs in a sentence where the positive statement is expressed first, followed by a contradiction of it:

a'a, nti mäTi'ya, aqoi quTi'ya      *No, I'm not talking to you but  
to him.*  
ni wamnga ml'ya, qomä hanga ql'ya      *I'm not working; I'm just playing.*

## 11.6. OBJECTIVE CASE IN NEGATIVE AUXILIARY

Object prefixes may occur with the negative auxiliary form.

- \* mUTa hi                              *Don't speak to him!*
- \* maNATÄPa qiyangiya ti      *They (Pl.) didn't give it to us.*
- \* aqoä'u yäi mEÄTa qi'i      *They are not speaking to us.*

## 12. SIMPLE CLITIC SENTENCES

### 12.1. CLITICS

(a) A clitic in Kapau is a suffix which may be affixed to all parts of speech. Clitics occur with Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, Demonstrative and Adverbs to form a simple sentence, and with Verbs to form more complex sentences. (These latter are dealt with in section 19.)

(b) Clitics may be suffixed to more than one part of speech in a particular utterance. Their grammatical attachment is to the expression as a whole to form a phrase (or in the case of verbs a clause), rather than to the word to which they are actually affixed.

(c) Clitics are always to the last suffix of a word, so may be called closing morphemes.

(d) In simple sentence the occurrence of a clitic does not form any new sentence type, rather the extension of any one 'spot' in the language to form a *phrase*. A phrase may consist of one or more words expressing more than one thought, concept, e.g. 'house' expresses just the name of a thing, but '*to the house*' expresses location as well as object of that location; the latter is a *phrase*, the former, a word.

(e) Because clitics occur with such a wide variety of word classes, their occurrence is frequent and their importance high in Kapau sentence structure.

(f) There are four different types of clitics:

1. 'Concerning' clitics
2. Location clitics (locative).
3. Qualifying clitics.
4. Personalising clitics.

## 12.2. 'CONCERNING' CLITICS

There are just two of these clitics:

- 'ma 'concerning', or about a *thing*; 'also; for; because; for that purpose' (latter meanings more frequently occurring when attached to verbs).
- 'na 'concerning' for, to a *person*.

The head of a 'concerning' clitic construction is almost always a noun or pronoun. Insufficient analysis has been done on this as yet but it appears that the resultant phrase occurs as object of the verb. We are thus tentatively postulating this as an object phrase. Study of the following sentences where object phrases are formed as a result of the above clitics being suffixed to nouns, adjectives, adverbs, demonstrative and pronouns will give you a bit of the workings of clitics.

## CLITICS PLUS:

	OBJECT PHRASE	P.V.
N.	änga'MA	qanT*i He spoke to me about the house (lit. 'house about to-me-spoke-he').
Adj.	änga quyv'a'MA	qanT*i He spoke to me about the old house (lit. 'no good').

## CLITICS PLUS:

	OBJECT PHRASE	P.V.
Adv.	änga ntä'MA	qanT*i He spoke to me about the old house over there.
Dem.	ä'MA	qanTi He spoke to me about that.
Pron.	äqoi'NA	qanTi He spoke to me about him.

## 12.2.1. SENTENCES

äpa'MA qu'wa	I'm going for the sing-sing.
smtita'MA ya qanl'ni	I'm feeling frightened of snakes.
nti'NA ya ql'i	He is being afraid of you.
yesusu aqoi'NA qanätanqa ti	He told us about Jesus.
kiäpoi'NA ho	You go down to the Kiap.
* yäi hänga'MA qaPo	We two are coming for the cargo.
mpuka'MA qaMTanga	I want a book.

## 12.3. LOCATIVE CLITICS

Most clitics fall in this group. They are as follows:

-u	<i>on; at the time; at the place</i>
-i, -'i	<i>at; on; in sight</i>
-m	<i>in; inside; out of sight</i>
-'na	<i>to (never occurs without another morpheme) (See 12.6.1.)</i>
-ntä, -tä	<i>from (never occurs without another morpheme)</i>

It will be noted that -i, -'i and -m have already been dealt with as adverbial suffixes (see 9.1.3.).

When attached to a noun, pronoun, etc. these clitics form what we call in English an adverbial prepositional phrase, which occurs in adverb position. Hence, this sentence type is an extension of Sentence Type 6.

## CLITICS PLUS:

	SUBJECT	ADVERBIAL PHRASE	P.V.	
N.	inga	ängaU	qaPME'ä ti (P.2.)	(1)
	qasmnga	ängaM	qoe (S.)	(2)
Adj.	inga	änga na'aU	qapme'ä ti (P.2.)	(3)
Adv.	inga	iya hä'ä yäM	qapmeä (P.C.)	(4)
Dem.	nai	taU	qapmeängo (S.)	(5)

- (1) *The bird sat on the house.*
- (2) *The spear is (lit. 'lies') in the house.*
- (3) *The bird sat on the big house.*
- (4) *The bird is sitting right up in the tree.*
- (5) *We are sitting on this.*

## 12.3.1. SENTENCES

qoä mhaM hai (Imp.)	<i>Bury it in the ground!</i>
ime'ä aqoä wamngaU hanga * qiyatonga (S.C.)	<i>The children (they) are playing in the garden.</i>
inkumä e'äU haMAU (Imp.)	<i>Throw the tin in the water!</i>
änga taM HAI (Imp.)	<i>Put it in this house!</i>
pmauka ta'I HAI (Imp.)	<i>Put the lid on here!</i>
mpeso mpokisi aU qOE (S.)	<i>The pencil is on that box.</i>

## 12.4. QUALIFYING CLITICS

These are:

-nga emphasises the thought expressed by the noun, adjective, adverb

and pronoun.

- ma *only (a thing)*  
 -na *only (a person)*

These clitics do not alter the word class, sentence type when they are affixed to the above parts of speech.

It is difficult to give an English meaning to -nga but the following free translation (*Italics capitals*) are as close as we can get to the type of emphasis denoted by this morpheme. It can sometimes be translated as '*that one*'.

CLITIC PLUS:

	SUBJECT	OBJECT	ADVERB	VERB	
N.	hope'aNGA		ntäu	qOE (S.)	(1)
	hope'AMa			qOE (S.)	(2)
Pron.	ningANGA	haka na'a		qäMI'ya ti (P.2.)	(3)
	aqona			qaPMEÄ (S.)	(4)
Adv.	ä	quyv'aNGA ni		qäMI'ya (P.C.)	(5)
Adj.		haka na'aNGA ni		qäMI'ya ti (P.2.)	(6)

- (1) *THAT KAUKAU I'M TALKING ABOUT is (lies) over there.*  
 (2) *Only the kaukau is there.*  
 (3) *As for me I plaited a big bamboo.*  
 (4) *Only he is sitting.*  
 (5) *I'm plaiting badly.*  
 (6) *As for the big bamboo, I plaited that.*

It will be noted that in the last two sentences, the subject occurs immediately before the verb. From a superficial analysis it appears that it is not possible to have an adverb or adjective suffixed by -nga contiguous to a verb; some other part of speech must separate the two.

The reduplication of the -nga as in ninganga above, gives added emphasis. It seems to occur as a hesitancy of speech similar to English '*error*'. It may be reduplicated up to four times in rapid fire conversation, especially with some speakers.

12.4.1. SENTENCES

- qau'ya nqaMA qI'ya (P.C.) *I'm searching to no avail (lit. 'search my-only I'm doing').*  
 \* hanqoNA qaPi *Some one man only is coming.*  
 haka na'aNGA, ni qaMI'ya *The big bamboo; I plaited it.*

aqo qa'aväi q'i, ma            *He is doing it slowly; I am the one*  
 hangami'yaNGA ni q'ya        *doing it quickly.*

## 12.5. PERSONALISING CLITICS

These may also be added to the above parts of speech, but they differ from the other clitics in that they are declined like pronominal suffixes for person and number, and also for gender, though unlike pronominal suffixes, they attach to all the major parts of speech as the other clitics do. They are called 'personalising' clitics because they change the noun, pronoun, adjectives, etc. into person possessing the quality of that noun, pronoun, adjective, etc. They may be translated '*I am the one...*', '*You are the one...*', etc.

### 12.5.1. THE PERSONALISING CLITICS are as follows:

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	
1S.	-on	-n	<i>I am the one.</i>
2S.	-oi	-i	<i>You are the one.</i>
3S.	-o, -qo, -o	-i	<i>He, she is the one.</i>
1DL.	-qoäi	-säi	<i>We two are the ones.</i>
2DL.	-qoängui	-sängui	<i>You two are the ones.</i>
3DL.	-qoä'u	-sä'u	<i>They two are the ones.</i>
1PL.	-onai	-iyonai	<i>We all are the ones.</i>
2PL.	-ohen	-iyohen	<i>You all are the ones.</i>
3PL.	-o'ä, -'oä	-i'yoä	<i>They all are the ones.</i>

From the above it appears that -o is the masculine marker, and i the feminine.

Note: The personalising clitics added to the following parts of speech:

<i>Personal N.</i>	aqo amä'o ti	<i>He is a man.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ni fa'nON ti	<i>I am the way (lit. 'trail').</i>
<i>Adj.</i>	ni tawaT*ON ti	<i>I am the one who is true.</i>
	amä'ä awO'O ti	<i>He is a good man.</i>

Compare the second and third sentences above with the following:

fa'na ha'otna ti	<i>The road is straight.</i>
anga pane'a tawata ti	<i>This is true talk.</i>

## 12.5.2. SENTENCES

aqo yäng0 ti	<i>He is the one who gives.</i>
aqo qai'yo ti	<i>He is the one who is light.</i>
nti amä'ä qhouk0I ti	<i>You are a tall man.</i>
ni wamnga hang0N ti	<i>I am the one who has work.</i>
hainga okä no'OHEN ti	<i>You all are big.</i>
ni äton ti	<i>I am Äto.</i>
qinga amä'ä awaqaöngui ti	<i>You two are good men.</i>
i'yoä äpaki'YOÄ ti	<i>They are women.</i>

## 12.6. MULTIPLE CLITICS

Sometimes two or even three clitics may be suffixed one after the other to a word.

## 12.6.1. COMBINATIONS OF TWO CLITICS

## (a) Combinations of Locative Clitics

Those we have noted to date mostly comprise the locative clitics, -u, -'i, -m 'on; at; in', as the first suffixial clitics and -ntä, -tä, 'from' or -'na 'to' as the second.

-'intä	<i>from; at; somepoint</i>
-untä, utä	<i>from; at; on</i>
-mtä	<i>from; within; out of sight</i>
-u'na	<i>to a place</i>

These clitics frequently occur suffixed to the *Demonstratives* as ä 'that'; ta 'this'; fa 'some' and to adverbs of place.

Note: the following resultant forms:

aUNTÄ	<i>from; at that one</i>	(lit. 'that-at-from')
aMTÄ	<i>from in there</i>	( " 'that-in-from')
tAUNTÄ	<i>from here</i>	( " 'this-at-from')
hMTÄ	<i>from somewhere</i>	( " 'this-at-from')
ntäUNTÄ	<i>from over there</i>	( " 'some-in-from')
mha'INTÄ	<i>from (that place) down below</i>	( " 'below-at-from')

-u plus -'na (u'na) is another common multiple clitic form meaning 'to a place' and -i plus -'na (i'na) 'to the person', e.g. aqo änguU'NA nUwata ti 'He went to the house'.

## (b) Combinations of Personalising and Locative Clitics

The personalising clitic is always in first order, e.g. -qo 'he' +

i'na 'concerning' becomes -qoi'na.

ntäqoi'na means 'the male one over there'

amä'ä qoeänga ntäqoi'na qant\**i* He spoke to me about the man over there.

#### 12.6.2. SENTENCES

hai'ya ängaU'NA tu'wa	Are you (Pl.) going to your houses?
ta'INTÄ qanU'NI (P.C.)	I pain here (lit. 'I pain from at this point').
aqo änga quyv'AU'NA nUwata ti	He went to the old (no good) house.
aqo ängau'NA quyv'a * nuwata ti	It is a bad thing that he went to the house.
pitotou'NA qu'wa	I'm going to Bulolo.
* nqa ängaUNTÄ QOEÄPA	I'm coming from my house.
apa änga ymiUNTÄ Täno	We'll sing (from) at that place.
a'INTÄ qu'wa	They went from there.
aqo AMTÄ na'UYÄPata ti	He came out of there.
* AMTÄ Pn	Where are you coming from?
e'ä pnga yämiu'NA nUWatä'ä ti	We went up to the Lake.

12.6.3. Combinations of three clitics have been noted as follows:

(1) The above multiple clitics suffixed by -nga 'emphatic' (usually meaning 'the one' in this occurrence) as the third suffixial clitic, e.g. a-m-tä-nga 'the one from in there'.

(2) Personalising clitics as the first of the series of three clitic suffixes, e.g. aw-o'o-i'na'nga 'good-he-for-emphasis'.

amä'ä AWO'OI'NANGA fi mhe'ä qiya As for the good man there's none for him.

#### 12.6.4. SENTENCES

AMTÄNGANGA yämiu'NA wat*a ti	That one from in there will go up there.
amtänqoi ti	Where are you from?

#### 13. OBVITATIVE MOOD

Obvitative Mood is the name we have given to another mood which reflects the psychological attitude of the speaker. It usually expresses

the 'thought or course' or 'it's an obvious statement to make', though it also expresses emphasis and often something else whose meaning is elusive and has not yet been isolated. The correct use of this mood will only be obtained by observing the type of language situation in which it occurs.

### 13.1. NON-ti TENSE OBVITATIVE MOOD SENTENCES

#### SENTENCE TYPE 2A. ± Subject + P.V.

As with Interrogative Mood (see 10.3.) just the (n) pronoun series tenses occur in the above sentence type. Obvitative Mood is formed simply by a change of pronoun series. Present Continuous tense changes to the straight (a) series, the other three tenses/aspects to the (qa) series.

Compare the following:

	OBVITATIVE		INDICATIVE	
P.C.	qoeäp*a	<i>I'm coming down (of course).</i>	qoeäp*n	<i>You are coming down.</i>
P.I.	qoeäpmanqa	<i>I came down.</i>	qoeäpmanga	<i>I came down.</i>
P.S.	qoenqa	<i>I am obviously lying down.</i>	qoenga	<i>I am lying down.</i>
S.C.	qiyat*onqa	<i>I am obviously in a state of doing.</i>	qiyat*onga	<i>I am in a state of doing.</i>

Note: The Present Continuous Obvitative form is the same as Past 2 Form, but without the ti.

#### 13.1.1. SENTENCES

ankina	qoeäpmanqa	<i>He came yesterday (it's an obvious fact).</i>
aqoä	sä'ä q0Enguwa	<i>They are sleeping (can't you see it)?</i>
wamnga	qiyat*onqa	<i>Sure, I'm working.</i>
hai	atäta qäTuwa	<i>They are surely lying.</i>
aqo	yämi qU'wa	<i>There he goes, up there!</i>

### 13.2. OBVITATIVE V1-V2 SENTENCES

#### SENTENCE TYPE 4A. ± Subject + V1-V2x

V1	V2	
noeäpmna	qi'ya	<i>I'm surely going to come down.</i>



## 14.1. LIGATURE WORDS

## 14.1.1. WORDS WHICH JOIN NOUNS AND PRONOUNS TOGETHER (STRUCTURAL CLASS F)

fa, ha	<i>with; and (referring to things)</i>
ta	<i>with; and (referring to persons together, accompanying)</i>
qi	<i>suppose (often 'suppose this or that')</i>

The above three words usually occur following both (or all) nouns or pronouns which they join, though when *qi* means 'suppose' usually it occurs just once in the sentence, following the noun it 'supposes'.

Compare the three following sentences:

hope'a fa pätate fa tamato fa	<i>Kaukau and potato and tomato.</i>
hope'a qi pätate qi tamato qi	<i>Suppose (you eat) kaukau or tomato or potato...</i>
amä'ä qoka TA äpaka TA qU'wi	<i>The man and the woman are going together.</i>

## 14.1.2. OTHER SENTENCES

ta: ni TA nti TA aqa wino	<i>You and I will go together.</i>
* ta: nti wamnga ni TA itna taPn	<i>Are you coming to work for (with) me?</i>
qanäi TA qai'ya ime'ä TA qu'wi	<i>The mother is going accompanied by her child.</i>
aqo TA aqoi'ya hive'ä FA yä'ä qU'wi	<i>He and his dog are going together.</i>
qi: nqa Ql äTm	<i>Let me speak (lit. 'suppose I have my say')!</i>
fa: hope'a FA kapisu FA hI'YAI	<i>Cook kaukau and cabbage!</i>
mpeso FA nkumi fa nTÄPu	<i>Give me the pencil and eraser!</i>
yäqoe'a FA hive'ä FA qU'wi	<i>The pig and the dog are going.</i>

Note: *inä* (usually meaning 'when' or 'then' also occurs meaning 'and' though when it occurs, rather than *fa* is not clear.

qav'amnga qoka, hinmpaika, INÄ	<i>In the forest there stands Koka, himpaika and qopa trees.</i>
** qopa qato	
hope'a FA, e'ä FA, yäqoe'a, INÄ	<i>Bring me kaukau, water, pigs, shorts</i>
qäka INÄ yi, haka, ketuwa	<i>arrows, bamboo and spoons! I will</i>
namä hämpi, ni hingo wa'anma	<i>see them. (Kiap to the people.)</i>

## 14.1.3. WORDS WHICH JOIN CLAUSES OR UTTERANCES (STRUCTURAL CLASS G)

ä	<i>or</i>
ma	<i>introductory conversational word</i>
ha	<i>like that</i>
anga	<i>that thing or clause first referred to</i>

These words all occur at the beginning of a clause or utterance joining it to another or referring back to a previous utterance. *ma* occurs at the beginning of almost any conversation.

## 14.1.4. SENTENCES

ä:	nti hope'a fi nantna ti'in, Ä MÄNQA itna ti'in	<i>Will you eat some kaukau or won't you eat any?</i>
*	nti äkinä Uta tä, Ä soinä uta tä	<i>Are you going tomorrow or are you going the day after?</i>
ma:	MA, qoä awa ti MA, hamPu ma, nUmqa HEänqa	<i>My, the ground is good! All right, you come! Surely, I'm going!</i>
ha:	aqo HA quTma	<i>He said thus to him...</i>
anga:	ANGA quyv'a ti ANGA nta tä anga ni qI'ya ti	<i>That's no good. Is that one yours? That one; I did it.</i>

## 14.2. VERBAL PARTICLES (STRUCTURAL CLASS H)

ipäka	<i>finished</i>
iwa	<i>must not</i>
hanga	<i>have, possess</i>
ata	<i>don't know</i>
qamta	<i>lack of knowledge</i>

The above words modify the verb (which they precede) but in a different way to adverbs as the following sentences should illustrate:

ipäka:	wamnga IPÄKA niyatmnga ti (I.P.)	<i>I've just finished the work.</i>
hanga:	aqo wamnga HANGA ti ni änga HANGA ti nqa hempä ä HANGA ti	<i>He has work. I have a house. My arm has hair on it (ä means 'hair').</i>
iwa:	(possibly only occurs with future tense verbs but this has not been checked) nti natiyänqa IWA utä (F.) *qunmämta hu	<i>You mustn't go slowly, go quickly!</i>

hangami'ya hu, apäi IWA    *Go quickly, you mustn't stop here*  
 \* pmäta (F.)                    *and there!*

Note: apäi in the above sentence seems to mean 'here and there'. 'in one place and another place', e.g.

	qu'ya wamnga APÄI qapmeänga	<i>They are at their gardens, here and there.</i>
ata:	ATA, ni mä'änqati	<i>I don't know.</i>
qamta:	ni QAMTA qi'ya	<i>I fail to understand (lit. 'lack of knowledge I'm doing').</i>
	aqo QAMTA qanlya	<i>He doesn't recognise me.</i>
Compare:	ni mä'änqa ti	<i>I don't know.</i>
	ni na'anqa ti	<i>I know.</i>

#### 14.3. qomä 'only, simply, just' (STRUCTURAL CLASS I)

qomä appears to be the only word that fills this position in the language. It appears to qualify the noun or pronoun in Subject position which it seems to always follow.

mpuka QOMÄ tifa'a hamäta ama	<i>The book is just black and red.</i>
tiya QHE	
ya QOMÄ änga tam PMÄma	<i>I will simply sit down in the house.</i>
* ni QOMÄ yä'ä yänga qatÄPA	<i>I am simply giving you this knife.</i>
aqo QOMÄ yäko niYÄPata ti	<i>He only came up temporarily.</i>

#### 14.4. hintä 'side' (STRUCTURAL CLASS J)

hintä appears to be a qualifier word meaning 'side', 'side of'. It follows the word which it qualifies which may be a noun, adjective or adverb (more analysis needed here).

hope'a änga ym HINTÄ qOE	<i>The kaukau is lying on the lower side of the house.</i>
* aqoi'ya tuwa HINTÄ qaTO	<i>He is standing behind (backside) him.</i>
qonä'ma HINTÄ hingo ha'ANI	<i>Look to the left side!</i>
* yäi hatoä HINTÄ wito ti	<i>We two will go this side.</i>
hatoä HINTÄ haPMÄ	<i>Turn round!</i>
THINTÄ PÄVI	<i>Come along here (this side)!</i>

Note: hatoä frequently refers to something two sided, though it may refer to something with more than two sides, e.g.

mpokisi tanga HATOÄ hiviyat\*a    *This box is yellow on one side; red*  
 ti; HATOÄ hamät\*a ti; ma        *on another and white on the*  
 HATOÄ qapähe'a ti                *other.*

hatoä -täu-    *to turn inside out*

hatoä -mhäi-    *to turn something over*

#### 14.5. EXCLAMATION (STRUCTURAL CLASS K)

##### (a) Signalling Words to gain attention:

to        *hey*        to, hampu    *Hey, you come!*

wai        *hey*

ntawäe    *friend*

##### (b) Response Words, i.e. uttered in response to some previous utterance:

e            *yes*

heo        *yes*

hawai     *no*

a'a        *no*        A'A ninga yä'ä noma    *No, I'm not going down soon.*

wai        *what* in answer to a call

a pi'ya    *of course*

manau     *goodbye (lit. 'you go')*

##### (c) Exclamations of Fear, Anger, Surprise, etc.:

oä        *spoken with falling intonation means disgust; with rising intonation it means sympathy*

äi        *expresses surprise, often at pain*

äi, äi'na to okä ta hanga ti    *The iron is very hot.*

o        O ta nhe'opat\*a ti    *O, the fire has gone out!*

haka     *exclamation of surprise*

iyai     *expresses pain or sorrow*

IYAI, tanga qanu'ni    *Oh, I'm in pain.*

#### 14.6. NUMERALS

Numerals function as adjectives following the noun. They are as follows (it is not known when each form is used):

## NUMERICAL

fati		hivä'u fati
fatina		hiwatä'u hiwa <i>three</i>
hiwa	<i>one</i>	
hiwatina		
hivä'u		hivä'u hivä'u
hiwatä'u	<i>two</i>	hiwatä'u hiwatä'u <i>four</i>
avä'u		

## 14.7. MISCELLANEOUS OTHER PARTICLES

nqoe'a 'pause while thinking what to say'; similar to 'er':

niyäpm... nqoe'a... smt\*inä 'I came up... er... arrived at noon'.

Here is nqoe'a used because smtinä did not come to mind. Since it did not come to mind nqoe'a was used in its place. The above example is good of its use. Another is:

NQOE'A ntäpu, hava 'Give me the... what-do-you-call-it, ...the knife'.

## 15. SIMPLE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD SENTENCES

## 15.1. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Subjunctive Mood sentences are usually complex sentences, meaning something would have happened if some conditions had been fulfilled. These complex sentences contain one or two subordinate clauses and a main clause which carries the Subjunctive Mood. In this section, however, we are dealing with only the Subjunctive clause. For example, 'He would have gone.' (understood, 'if he had been asked').

Subjunctive Mood is characterised by the following things:

- (1) different formation for ti and non-ti tenses (as in other mood);
- (2) in all tenses except Immediate Future, the presence of the distinctive Subjunctive Mood marker -nhe;
- (3) the (mao) pronoun series occurs throughout.

## 15.2. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN THE NON-ti TENSES

## 15.2.1. (n) PRONOUN SERIES

...nai Wo'änhe *We would be going.*

Again in the four tenses/aspects function similarly. Their Subjunctive Mood characteristics are as follows:

- (1) no verb prefix;
- (2) presence of their characteristic tense/aspect morpheme, viz.
 

P.C.	-'	
Past 1	-mang	(see A.33. Past)
Stat.Pres.	-ng	
Stat.Cont.	-at*ong	
- (3) (mao) pronoun suffixes;
- (4) -nhe subjunctive mood suffix.

Note the following paradigms:

	<i>Present Cont.Subj. of 'do'</i>	<i>Stat.Cont.Subj. of 'do'</i>
1S.	yangmnhe <i>I would do,</i>	* yatongmnhe <i>I would be doing,</i>
2S.	yanganhe <i>etc.</i>	* yatonganhe <i>etc.</i>
3S.	yangonhe	* yatongonhe
1DL.	yanginhe	* yatonginhe
2,3DL.	yanghinhe	* yatonghinhe
1PL.	yangoänhe	* yatongoänhe
2,3PL.	yanghunhe	* yatonghunhe

#### 15.2.2. IMMEDIATE FUTURE

The Immediate Future Subjunctive follows the usual *V-Vx* pattern, denoting purpose. *V2* is the Stative Aspect of he-stem *qhe*. Thus Immediate Future Subjunctive is ...*ima ymnhe 'I would be going to do'*.

#### 15.3. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN *ti* TENSES

*i qäpengot\*a hengonhe She would have died.*

The *ti* tense Subjunctive Mood verbs have the same form as in Indicative Mood with the following exceptions:

- (1) all tenses except Future and Past 2 have (mao) pronoun series;
- (2) it is usual for the (a) pronoun series to add the morpheme -t\*a 'future' following the pronoun suffix;
- (3) *ti* is replaced by *hengonhe* (Stative of he- 'be' stem plus -nhe).

Note the following forms:

weäpmqa hengonhe	<i>I would come down. (F.)</i>
noeäpatmnga hengonhe	<i>I would have just come down. (I.P.)</i>

qoeäpmqa hengonhe	<i>I would have come down. (P.)</i>
* qoeäpangmta hengonhe	<i>I would have come down. (D.P.)</i>
* qoeäpmangmta hengonhe	<i>I would always be coming down. (Hab.)</i>
* qoeäpä'ängmta hengonhe	<i>I would always have come down. (P.Hab.)</i>
* qiyatängmta hengonhe	<i>I would always have done. (Stat.Hab.)</i>

### 15.3.1. SENTENCES

* ...hingo qu'WANangoäta hengonhe (D.P.)	<i>...we would have seen him.</i>
...yä'ä sä'ä WEngmhe (S.)	<i>...I would still be sleeping.</i>
* ...äpa qäTanghuta hengonhe (D.P.)	<i>...they would have sung.</i>
* ...aqananga qäPAmangoäta hengonhe (Hab.)	<i>...we would have died altogether (lit. 'permanently').</i>
...ni sä'ä WAmna ymhe (P.C.) (V-Vx)	<i>...I would be planning to sleep.</i>

## 16. OTHER VERB CONSTRUCTIONS

### 16.1. THE -n VERB SUFFIX SIGNALLING INTRANSITIVE, REFLEXIVE, RECIPROCAL

The -n, (-ng) before back sounds, verb suffix has a wide area of meaning which has not been completely satisfactorily determined. It appears to make a transitive expression intransitive, to suggest the passive, to mean reciprocal or reflexive. It is also closely associated with the -'a verb morpheme. -n plus -'a becomes -nqa (see next section).

#### 16.1.1. -n SIGNALLING INTRANSITIVE

Compare the following sentences:

(1) aqo e'ä QHOE'ÄT*! (P.C.) e'ä qhoe'ät'Ni	<i>He spilled the water. The water spilled.</i>
(2) iya naIKATNata ti (I.P.) iya naikatNat*! ti	<i>He broke the tree. The tree broke.</i>
(3) iya qätawi'ya ti iya awa qätaw'Ni	<i>He cut the pole. The pole cut well.</i>
(4) qänga naviyatmnga ti (I.P.) qänga nauNat*a ti	<i>I opened the door. The door opened.</i>
(5) pmauka hi pmauka qiNa	<i>Put the lid on! The lid is put on.</i>

- (6) tuwämnga qa'i'iyä (P.C.) *I am writing (a letter etc. understood).*  
 tuwämnga qa'aNa *It is written.*

The second sentence in each case also suggests a state, i.e. 'the water is in a state of being spilled', 'the tree is in a state of brokenness', etc.

#### 16.1.2. n- SIGNALLING REFLEXIVE

Study these sentences:

- (1) ni pane'a qati'ya (P.C.) *I'm speaking.*  
 nqa no qatni'ya *I'm speaking to myself.*
- (2) pateä i hapa (Imp.) *Wash the dishes!*  
 ni i panma (I.F.) *I'll wash myself.*
- (3) soke'na qiNangn *You have socks on.*
- (4) i mnga qata'Ni *She is cutting herself with a knife.*
- (5) pänsi nauyätNana (I.F.) *The bandage will unwrap itself.*
- (6) nta ntava qatni'in *You are talking to yourself.*

#### 16.1.3. -n SIGNALLING RECIPROCAL

- pane'a qati'yo *We are talking.*  
 pane'a qatNi'yo *We are talking to each other.*  
 a'ma qatni'yo *That's what we are talking about.*

#### 16.2. THE -'a VERB SUFFIX

When -'a is suffixed to a verb stem, several different kinds of constructions result. The form *verb stem + -'a* functions in each of the constructions as a type of descriptive so that we are calling the -'a morpheme a '*descriptiviser*'. It may also occur with the n- intransitive suffix (the two morphemes coming to -nqa) and the expression then carries an intransitive idea.

##### 16.2.1. -'a NOUN EXPRESSION

This consists of noun root + -'a which together form a noun.

- hun- '*cut*' + 'a becomes hunqa: mta hunqa '*razor*'  
 qato '*cut across*' + -'a becomes qato'a: iya qato'a '*saw*'

In the above examples, -'a seems to mean the instrument that performs the action of the verb. Another different case is the following:

äsake pme'ä aqöäi wi Give it to the Äsake people!  
 (pmeä 'live' + -'a becomes pme'ä 'the living one', i.e. 'people'.)

#### 16.2.2. -'a DESCRIPTIVE EXPRESSION

This is a similar construction (Noun Root + 'a) except that the resultant form gives an adjectival idea, where the -'a seems to mean the same as the adjectival -y or -ed in English, as *snow-y*, *pitted (skin)*. As with other adjectives this expression may function in a sentence as an adverb (if tied to a verb as in the sentences listed below, where its I.C. is the verb particle, ti).

#### STEMS

- i- do; hänga 'ya ti 'It is weighty'
- ki- pile; to eat in order; hawa yuyu qnqa qoe 'The stones are arranged'
- ta to measure so much; äwa'i tanqa hayu 'Fill it (measure-ly) to the middle'
- 'a construction may occur with the personalising clitic (-on) following, e.g. hu- 'to be light'. wä hunqon ti 'I am the lighted one (I am light)'. It may also occur prefixed by mä- (negative) + na- (positive) so it seems since it contrasts with mä-.
- 'n- know; ni MÄ'ÄNQA ti 'I don't know'; ni NA'ANQA ti 'I (do) know'
- tawi- cut; NATAWNQA ti 'It is cut'; MÄTAWNQA ti 'It is not cut'; iya NATAWNQA ntäpu 'Give me the cut tree'
- phik- tear; täputäpu NAPHIKNQA ti 'It is a torn laplap'

#### 16.2.3. -'a + -'ma MEANING POSSIBILITY

When the clitic, -'ma suffixed to -'a the resultant construction seems to mean 'might', 'possible', 'an action performed because of the possibility of something', 'in the case of something'.

- y- 'do' + -'a + 'ma becomes 'ya'ma
- phi'ya ya'ma a'i hai 'Put it there as it might get wet (or so that it does not get wet)' (lit. 'wet-do might-there-put-it')

w- 'go' + -'a + 'ma becomes 'wa'ma

änga tau'na wa'ma ya qi'ya ti 'I was afraid of the possibility of going to the place of fire' (lit. 'place-burning-go-might-fear-do I')

NAIKATNQA'MA awa heta ti      *That is a good place to put it in case it might break.*

quphinga nqa'ma qhe'äo ti      *We put it (there) in case the insects might eat it (lit. 'insects eat-might put it').*

#### 16.2.4. -'a CONSTRUCTION OCCURRING IN A SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD SENTENCE MEANING 'suppose'

When a -'a construction occurs in a Subjunctive Mood sentence it means 'suppose so and so happened (i.e. in the PAST) then...', i.e. it speaks of hypothetical case.

The -'a construction occurs in the subordinate clause tied to the tertiary he- stem verb which always occurs in Subjunctive Mood sentences (usually he'engotiyä).

hingo wa'anqä he'engotiyä anga      *Suppose (or if-in the past) I had seen him I would have told him that.*  
ha utmangmne

ta'ma wa'a he'enä, piya      *Suppose (in the past) we had gone for wood, it would be raining on us.*  
eä'i'yonhe (I.P.)

wamnga quyv'a nqa no mham mo'a      *If (in the past) I had thrown away my sin myself, I would be proud still.*  
he'engotiyä hna mqamqa  
\* yatongmne

#### 16.3. ati VERB SUFFIX MEANING 'repeatedly'

Some verbs may take the suffix -ati immediately following the verb stem to indicate a repeated action. But the meaning is limited to that of going to do the action and then returning.

Compare the following:

(1) ni sä'ä änga ymiu wamqa ti      *I'll sleep at the house down below.*

ni sä'ä änga ymiu we'atimqa ti      *I'll keep going down to sleep below and returning.*



## 16.6. ORDER OF VERB SUFFIXES

Little analysis has been done on this yet but the following has been observed:

1st order after the stem	-n	<i>Reflexive, etc.</i>
2nd " " " "	-ati	<i>Repeatedly</i>
2nd " " " "	-hai, -he	<i>Completed Action</i>
3rd " " " "	-at*o	<i>Stative</i>
4th " " " "		<i>Tense/Aspect Morphemes</i>
5th " " " "		<i>Person Morphemes</i>

NOTE: i qa-PA-n-ati-'-ya 'I'm going down to wash myself all the time'  
(i noun associated with washing).



PART TWO:

C O M P L E X   S E N T E N C E S



## INTRODUCTION

The sentences in this section introduce a new series of verb forms which we are calling Participial Verbs. They are of tertiary rank in Kapau sentences (secondary verb forms will be dealt with later), and are *dependent* verb forms, that is, they may not occur unless 'tied' to a primary (or secondary) verb form. Dr Wurm calls these forms 'sentence medial' verb forms, but because in Kapau we have three sets of verb forms (two occurring medially) and because these present forms may be translated by English participial phrases we feel '*participial verbs*' may be a better name for them.

As in many other Highland languages these participial verbs are of two kinds:

**TYPE A:** those in which the subject of the participial verbs and of the primary verb is the same, as '*Coming he ate*', i.e. '*He came and ate*'.

**TYPE B:** those in which the subject of the participial verb and the subject of the primary verb is different, as '*He having come, we ate*', i.e. '*After he had come, we ate*'.

It will be seen later that the Different-Subject Participial Verbs behave quite differently to the Same-Subject Participial Verbs.

In the simple sentences discussed to date, we have noticed that the following constructions fill the verb 'spot':

1. Primary Verb (with or without verb particle following)
2. Noun-Verb expression
3. Verb-Verb expression
4. Imperative construction
5. Negative construction.

Primary verbs and imperative constructions always occur in primary verb position, though primary verbs have medial equivalents when they occur medially (secondary forms). But each of the other constructions

may occur in any verb 'spot' in the language including participial verb position. In most of the illustrations of the participial forms below only the simple participial form or *N-Vx* occurs (there has been no time to analyse and classify most of the other type verb constructions that may occur here), but be on the lookout for *V-V* and negative participial constructions.

## 17. SAME-SUBJECT PARTICIPIAL VERB SENTENCES

SENTENCE TYPE 7A. ± *Subj.* ± *Obj.* + *Pt.V.(A.)* ± *Pt.V.(A.)* + *P.V.*

Sentence Type 7A is an extension of Sentence Types 2A and 2B with the addition of one, two or three tertiary rank participial verb forms dependent upon the primary verb and occurring before it. The above sentence type deals with Same-Subject Participial Verbs (A).

### 17.1. SAME-SUBJECT PARTICIPIAL VERBS

These are alike in the following details:

(1) *they all take n- prefix.* It seems that when the *n-* prefix occurs with these verb forms it does not mean '*immediacy*' (though it may) as with the primary verb forms, but rather it seems to indicate the subordinate rank of these verbs. It will be noted that the *n-* prefix even in the primary verbs occurs with those tenses that in various respects behave differently to the *q* prefix tenses, not seeming to have the same structure primacy as *q-* prefix tenses. This whole matter, however, needs more careful analysis than has been given to it here.

(2) *only one of them expresses tense or aspect.* It is usually expressed in the primary verb the participial verb 'taking' in translation the same tense/aspect as the primary verb.

(3) two of the forms express person and two do not.

### 17.2. TYPES OF ACTION SIGNIFIED BY PARTICIPIAL VERBS

These forms express four different types of action:

(1) *Successive Action* (called in Kate '*Immediate Sequence*') dealing with actions that immediately follow one another, as '*He came and ate*'.

(2) *Simultaneous Action* dealing with actions that go on simultaneously as '*He whistled as he went*'.

(3) *Processive Action* dealing with a series of actions that go to make up a process, as the process of making a billum, clearing land for a garden, etc. which requires many actions but just one process. Hence, there is a sense of continuity of action culminating in a finished article or process.

(4) *Continuous Action having been terminated* dealing with actions performed continuously, then concluded, as working in the garden all day and then going home. It also expresses continuing in a state and then completing an action.

### 17.3. SUCCESSIVE ACTION

There are two participial forms which express Successive Action, depending on whether or not a motion verb ('go' or 'come') occurs as the primary verb.

17.3.1. SUCCESSIVE ACTION associated with *Motion Primary Verbs* is expressed by the following verb form: n-stem-'ma.

SUBJECT	Pt.V.(A)	P.V.	
nai	äpa natM'A (N-Vx)	Wäno (I.F.)	<i>We will sing and (then) go.</i>

Thus the form n...'ma signals the action following is subsequent to and immediately following the action of the dependent verb.

### 17.3.2. SENTENCES

aqo hänga NAMä'MA qu'wi (P.C.)	<i>He is getting the cargo and going (lit. 'getting the cargo he is going').</i>
aqoi NUWi'MA qU'wa ti (P.2.)	<i>I gave it to him and WENT (lit. 'giving it to him, I went').</i>
ita NAN'MA qu'wi (N-Vx) (P.C.)	<i>He ate and went (lit. 'having eaten, he went').</i>
quwa NAMä'MA qU'wa ti (N-Vx) (P.2.)	<i>He stole it and went away.</i>

### 17.3.3. SUCCESSIVE ACTION ASSOCIATED WITH NON-MOTION PRIMARY VERBS

This is a very commonly used construction in Kapau. It is expressed by a form we have called 'Successive Action Participle' which consists of n- stem (-m) series pronoun suffixes declined for all persons.

## SUCCESSIVE ACTION PARTICIPIAL CONJUGATION OF 'weäp'-

1S.	noeäpm	<i>I coming down.</i>
2S.	noeäpn	<i>You coming down.</i>
3S.	noeäpa	<i>He coming down.</i>
1Dl.	noeäpä	<i>We two coming down.</i>
2,3Dl.	noeäphi	<i>You, they two coming down.</i>
1Pl.	noeäpä	<i>We all coming down.</i>
2,3Pl.	noeäphu	<i>You, they all coming down.</i>

Subject Pt.V.(A) P.V.

aqo NOEÄPA ita qantäp\*a ti *He came down and gave me food.*

The primary verb in this construction may be any tense/aspect except *Stative* which when it occurs with this form means *Simultaneous Action* (see 17.4.4.).

## 17.3.4. SENTENCES

aqo Noeäpa ita ntäpana (I.F.)	<i>He will come down and give me food.</i>
ni NApM tha qätma... (I.F.)	<i>I will come to you and say this (lit. 'coming like this will say').</i>
ktosi NAKMAKN pnqa nHAinga mä'ä Ta'atna (Fut.Imp.)(N-Vx)	<i>Fold (the clothes), put them and then call me!</i>
finä NApM ima (I.F.)	<i>I'll come and do it later.</i>
änkinä äta tamato namä NApM qaTÄPmqä ti (F.)	<i>Tomorrow I'll bring you (lit. 'come and give') tomatoes.</i>
NiyäpHU ti nhuna	<i>They will come up and then drink tea.</i>

## 17.3.5. SENTENCES CONTAINING TWO PARTICIPIAL VERBS

Both of the above forms may occur in one sentence, either one occurring before the other as follows:

ita NiyamakM amä'ä haqoi NUWi'MA qumanga	<i>I made some food, gave it to the man and went (lit. 'food having made, man a-one-to him-giving went I').</i>
ni NUWIPAKATM'A qaPa (P.C.)	<i>I'm coming from leaving him (lit. 'I him-having-left I am coming').</i>
ni nutmä'ma naPatmnga ti (I.P.)	<i>I picked him up en route and have just come (lit. 'him having-picked-up-the-way-I-have-just-come').</i>

## 17.4. SIMULTANEOUS ACTION

There are likewise two participial forms which express Simultaneous Action depending on whether or not a 'motion' verb occurs as the primary verb.

17.4.1. SIMULTANEOUS ACTION ASSOCIATED with Motion Primary Verb is expressed by this form of verb:

n-, na- stem -ä or ('a)

(-'a seems to occur after most stems and -ä after nasals.)

Pt.V.(A)

P.V.

äp\*a naT\*ä (N-Vx)    qu'wa (P.C.)    *I'm going singing (lit. 'I singing am going').*

This construction occurs very frequently with the mä 'get' stem in conjunction with the p- 'come' and u- 'go' stems meaning 'to bring' or 'carry'. That is, these verbs to the Kapau mind are two simultaneous actions 'get come' or 'get go' (like Pidgin 'Kisim i kam'). The full participial form is namä'ä but this is frequently shortened to namä.

hope'a naMÄ qäPa ti    *He brought the kaukau.*

ime'ä naMÄ haPMÄ    *Watch the baby (lit. 'sit and get')!*

Other namä (namä'ä) expressions are as follows:

namä pmä-    *sit; look after, care for*

namä yäp-    *come up; bring up*

namä weäp-    *come down; bring down*

17.4.2. OTHER INTERESTING EXAMPLES of the above are as follows:

(1) iya NIWO'A QU'wa    *I'm going carrying a pole.*

(-iwau- 'to put on one's  
shoulders)

(2) änga posi NA'utÄ uma (I.F.)    *I'll go and put up posts (lit.  
'house posts planting I will go').*

(3) tha ni'yä hu (Imp.)    *Do this as you go (lit. 'this  
doing go')!*

(4) posi NA'utnÄ quwa (S.)    *The posts are all planted.*

(Note: n- 'intransitive')

(5) kngo NA'iYÄ nuwhaunga ti    *They went away crying.*

(I.P.)

- (6) aqo hänga NAMä qu'wi (P.C.) *He's carrying the cargo.*  
 (7) aqo wip\*a NAT\*Ä qu'wi (P.C.) *He's going along whistling.*

but:

- (8) aqo ya NAPme'Ä pane'a qat\*i *He's sitting down talking.*

#### 17.4.3. SIMULTANEOUS ACTION ASSOCIATED WITH NON-MOTION PRIMARY VERBS

If the action of either participial or primary verb is stative, the Successive Action participial occurs. It is usually occurring when the primary verb has a stative stem (often expressed in Stative Aspect, though it may carry any tense as well).

Pt.V. (A)	P.V.	
hingo nä'änä (N-Vx)	qat*ongo (S.)	<i>We are standing looking at you (lit. 'eye looking we-are-standing').</i>

#### 17.4.4. SENTENCES

qomä hingo NA'an haT*AU (Imp.)	<i>Just stand (there) and look!</i>
aqo ängam NAPmeäTA qIKE'ä ti (P.2.)	<i>He being in the house, built a fire.</i>
aqo äto NUta qapmeä (S.)	<i>He is sitting there helping him.</i>
ni hingo NA'änM t*ama (I.F.)	<i>I'll stand and watch you.</i>
panga NAKIYA qapmeä (S.)	<i>He's sitting chewing betel nut.</i>
aqo nu'wa NimpnA qat*o (S.) (N-Vx)	<i>He's standing there wearing shells.</i>
aqo hingo NA'anA qat*o	<i>He's standing watching.</i>
ta NiM T*AMa, ä ta NiM T*AMa (I.F.)	<i>I will stand like this or like this (lit. 'this doing I will stand').</i>
(t*a- Stative Stem)	

#### 17.4.5. MORE COMPLEX PARTICIPIAL SENTENCES

Both the above participial forms may occur in the one sentence in either order. Study the following:

häka NAMeÄ NAMä NA'uyäpa quwl'i (P.C.)	<i>She got the salt, brought it out and gave it to him.</i>
---	---

(Note: the act above has just been done, so the primary verb is Present Continuous Tense. (See 2.4.2.) Stem is wi- 3rd Person 'give' stem, u- 'to him'.)

ni ta NAMä'MA NiyäpM ta QIKE'Ä ti (P.2.)	<i>I fetched some firewood and built a fire (lit. 'I firewood getting having brought up fire build I').</i>
iya NATaM NAMä Pma (I.F.) ta NATawiyA NAMä naPa QHE'ä ti (P.2.)	<i>I'll cut a tree and bring it. He cut the firewood, brought it and put it (here).</i>
aqo NAMä NoeäPA qhe'ä ti (P.2.)	<i>He brought it down and put it (there).</i>

### 17.5. PROGRESSIVE ACTION

Processive Action is signalled by another participial form which appears to be formed from the Immediate Past Tense since it has the I.P. characteristic -at morpheme similar to the Successive Action participle, being prefixed by n-, na-, and suffixed by (m) series pronouns.

#### 17.5.1. PROGRESSIVE ACTION PARTICIPIAL FORMS OF weäp 'come down'

1S.	noeäpatm
2S.	noeäpatn
3S.	noeäpata
1DŁ.	noeäpatä
2,3DŁ.	noeäphai
1PL.	noeäpatä
2,3PL.	noeäphau

#### 17.5.2. MEANING

It seems that this participial form expresses a processive action often occurring simultaneously with another action. Some things which are not a process to the English mind are a process to the Kapau mind. These things have to be learnt. In sentences studied to date the following processes have occurred. The process of housebuilding, talking, clearing ground, gathering food, living, working, fire making, raining, ironing, and doing. Any tense may occur in the primary verb, though it is frequently Habitulative. Quite frequently the primary verb stem is Stative.

There are some occurrences of this form, however, that do not seem to mean process, for the successive action participial form any substitute in the same sentence. More analysis needs to be done on the comparison of sentences where the above two Participial forms occur.

## 17.5.3. SENTENCES

pane'a NAtATÄ qapmeängo	<i>We're sitting talking.</i>
wamnga NIYATÄ qapmeängo	<i>We're sitting working.</i>
aqo pane'a NAtATA wana	<i>He will talk as he goes.</i>
yap*a NiyATA pate'a qat*i	<i>He's sulking and being angry.</i>
äm'na NuWATN i'in	<i>Where are you going?</i>
wekäntau'na NuWATM qi'ya	<i>I'm going to Wekanta.</i>
pi'ya NAtATN ti'in	<i>What are you saying?</i>
pi'ya NIYAMAKATN i'in	<i>What are you (in the process of) building?</i>
ni hmpu NAnATM NApMÄM yma	<i>I'll sit here and eat a few.</i>
qi'ya (V-Vx)	
änga NiyamakATÄ PMEÄt*o ti	<i>We will live (there) building a</i>
(F.)	<i>house.</i>
ma, tha NAtATA qanäTanqa ti	<i>This is what he said to us...</i>
pi'ya'ma NiyATA I'i	<i>Why is he doing it?</i>
pi'ya NiyATA qäpe'a ti (P.2.)	<i>What happened that he died?</i>

## 17.6. CONTINUOUS ACTION HAVING TERMINATED

Unlike the other name-action verbs discussed to date, the construction under discussion here distinguishes tense/aspect as well as person. Like the others, it also carried the *n-* prefix. There are four conjugations expressing future and past time, in active and stative aspects. The future tenses carry the (mao) pronoun series, and the past the (a) series. The first person singular of each declension is as follows:

	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past</i>
<i>Active:</i>	1. -n-l-'i-m-ti-'yä	3. n-l-'y-a-'nä
<i>Stative:</i>	2. n-iy-ang-m-ti-'yä	4. na-pme-äng-a-'na

1. and 2. means '*after doing awhile I will...*' (active and stative); and 3. and 4. means '*after having done I did...*' (active and stative). These conjugations are structurally like the different person participial forms discussed in the next chapter. Here note that 1. and 2. contain the *-ti* future tense morpheme, and 3. and 4. the *-n* past tense morpheme. *-ang* means *Stative* and *-'* (first one) probably means *Active*. The full declensions are as follows:

	<i>Future Active</i>	<i>Future Stative</i>
1S.	ni'imti'yä	napmeängmti'yä
2S.	ni'yati'yä	napmeängati'yä
3S.	ni'yoti'yä	napmeängoti'yä
1Dl.	ni'iti'yä	napmeängiti'yä
2,3Dl.	ni'hiti'yä	napmeänghiti'yä
1Pl.	ni'yoäti'yä	napmeängoäti'yä
2,3Pl.	ni'huti'yä	napmeänghuti'yä

	<i>Past Active</i>	<i>Future Stative</i>
1S.	ni'ya'nä	napmeänga'nä
2S.	ni'i'nä	napmeängn'ä
3S.	ni'i'yä	napmeängi'yä
1Dl.	ni'yo'nä	napmeängo'nä
2,3Dl.	ni'i'yä	napmeängi'yä
1Pl.	ni'yo'nä	napmeängo'nä
2,3Pl.	ni'ya'vä	napmeänga'vä

### 17.6.1. SENTENCES

In the sentences listed below it will be noted that the Successive Action Processive participles frequently occur with these forms.

#### 17.6.1.1. Future Tense Sentences

wamnga Ni'IMTI'YÄ ipäka ni'ma WEÄpmna	<i>I'll work awhile; when I've finished working I'll come down.</i>
ya NAPmeängMTI'YÄ Uma	<i>I'll sit down awhile; then go.</i>
ni sänti ktikau'na nOm, matä pi'yo ta NapmeängMTI'YÄ ät*a pätau'na Imna	<i>I'll go down to Sandy Creek, stay with Master Bill awhile, and go on up to the Race.</i>
yäi wamnga Ni'ITI'YÄ napä qäIMÄito ti	<i>We two will work awhile and then come to you.</i>

#### 17.6.1.2. Past Tense Sentences

* aqo wamnga Ni'I'YÄ nUwata ti	<i>He worked awhile; then went.</i>
Aqo wamnga Ni'I'YÄ ipäka ni'ma * nUwata ti	<i>He worked awhile; finished it; then went.</i>
nti änga ymi wamnga Ni'I'NÄ qa'afainä tiYÄPmangn (P.1.)	<i>Were you working below (yesterday) and came up in the afternoon?</i>

aqo noeäpa aqa naPMEÄngo'nä qu'wi	<i>He came down and is going from our having sat down together for awhile.</i>
topi änkinä tontme'auntä niYÄPa, qai'ya ängau NAPmeäNGI'YÄ ät*a qIPÄMA	<i>Tobi came up from Tontameo yester- day stayed awhile at his house and went down again.</i>

### 17.7. REPETITIVE CONSECUTIVE ACTION

SENTENCE TYPE 7B. ± Subject ± R.A.V. + P.V.

Although this is not a participial construction like the three listed above, it is a similar two-verb construction, and it deals with type of action, in this case, repetitive, as they do. This construction deals with the actions which are done repeatedly and consecutively as shelling peas, picking fruit, cutting something into small pieces, stacking things one on top of the other, etc. The sentence consists of a verb form comprised of various types of reduplicated verb stems, with or without the suffix *-ma* (probably meaning 'repeatedly') and a primary verb carrying tense, etc. whose stem is always the *i-* 'do' stem (another example of the wide usage of the *i-* stem).

Object	R.A.V.	P.V.	
hope'a	kotakotama	hi (Imp.)	<i>Break up the kaukau bit by bit!</i>

The usage of this construction will be best seen by comparing the two following sentences:

hauka qaMTI'ya (P.C.)	<i>I am picking a fruit.</i>
hauka MTMTma qI'ya (P.C.)	<i>I am picking fruit.</i>

#### 17.7.1. REPETITIVE ACTION VERBS

The following are a list found thus far:

##### 1. Reduplication of Verb Stem + *-ma*

Reduplication			Pres.Prog. Tense showing Verb Stem
mtmtma	-i-	<i>pick, gather as fruit</i>	qaMTI'ya <i>I am picking.</i>
ptaptama	-i-	<i>jerk loose by hitting, as food out of a bamboo.</i>	qaPTI'ya <i>I am knocking the food loose.</i>

phikaphikama	-i-	<i>rip or tear</i>	qaPHIKi'ya	<i>I am tearing it up.</i>
ktktma	-i-	<i>chop small, slice as for beans</i>	qaIKUTO'a	<i>I am cutting it up small.</i>
kotakotama	-i-	<i>break open as fruit</i>	qaKOTI'ya	<i>I am breaking it up.</i>

## 2. Reduplication of (Verb Stem + -ma)

Reduplication			Pres.Prog. Tense showing Verb Stem
ymayma	-i-	<i>take from or off as water from river or scum off top of water</i>	qayv'a
TAUmaTAUma	-i-	<i>cut off bit by bit</i>	qatawi'ya
YAmAYama	-i-	<i>shell as beans</i>	qaYE'a, naYama (I.F.)

## 3. Reduplication of Verb Stem (without -ma)

### Reduplication

kapakapa	-i-	<i>walk about blindly, grope</i>
mpampa	-i-	<i>chew up banana, spit onto bark wrap with pit-pit shoots and cook</i>
PPkäu	-i-	<i>stack one on top of other</i>

Note: 'These are possibly plain nouns, but it is not certain as yet. Therefore, they are listed here.' (Tom Palmer)

### 17.7.2. SENTENCES

pisa hangami'ya YAmAYama Ymna	<i>I will shell the beans quickly.</i>
mäkutäiwa YmaYma hi	<i>Remove the scum from the water.</i>
iya TAUmaTAUma qI'yo ti	<i>We cut up the firewood.</i>

### 17.8. OBJECT PREFIX IN PARTICIPIAL VERBS

Object prefixes may occur with participial verb forms:

ita niyamakm pusi nUwin, pasi	<i>I made some food, gave it to the</i>
-------------------------------	---

tuwämnga qa'lmanga (P.1.)            *cat; then I wrote a letter.*  
 aqoi nUwi'ma hampu (Imp.)           *Give it to him and come!*

#### 17.9. NEGATIVE PARTICIPIAL FORMS

aqo namä mäp\*a qiyat\*o           *He is not bringing it.*  
 aqoi mut\*a nhiunga qomä       *They didn't talk to him; only gave it to*  
 nuwisaunga ti                       *him.*

#### 18. DIFFERENT-SUBJECT PARTICIPIAL VERB SENTENCES (ACTIVE VERBS)

SENTENCE TYPE 7C. ± Subj. ± Obj. + Pt.V.(B.) + P.V.

Here we deal with the same sentence type as the previous chapter except that these sentences contain Different-Subject Participial Verbs as '*HE having come WE all went together*'. It seems that there is a different set of these 'different-subject' verb forms for active and stative verb stems. In this section we deal with active verb stems only.

##### 18.1. DIFFERENT-SUBJECT PARTICIPIAL VERBS

In several respects these verbs function differently to the Same-Subject Participial Verbs but there needs to be much more analysis than has been done before their function can be described accurately.

The following observations are just tentative suggestions as to their function.

##### 18.1.1. DIFFERENCE BETWEEN SAME-SUBJECT AND DIFFERENT-SUBJECT PARTICULAR VERBS

1. Different-Subject Pt.V. usually are not prefixed though they may take n- prefix, probably when they express immediacy of action as suggested before was the meaning of n- prefix.

2. All Different-Subject Pt.V. are fully declined for person, and tense, there being 18 declensions discovered thus far, 6 expressing *action*, their 6 counterparts expressing *state* and 6 appearing to mean *continuent action*. It has not yet been ascertained accurately under what circumstances these 18 are used.

3. Nine of the 18 declensions are future tense declensions and seem to carry the following two distinctions:

(a) a straight participial form meaning '*having done...(I will)*'

(b) a participial form meaning '*WHEN having done... (I will)*'.

Each of the two has an active, stative, and continuous counterpart, the continuous meaning being '*will continue to do*'.

4. The remaining declensions express:

(a) Present Tense participles in active, stative, and continuous forms meaning usually '*if doing*' (Active and Stative) and '*if continuing to do*' (Continuous).

(b) Three past tenses, participles in active, stative, and continuous forms, whose meanings are yet very hazy. They may mean '*having continued to do*' (Past Continuous), '*having done... I did*' (Past); '*had done... I did*' (Past Completed). The meaning of these three hasn't been found yet as they are very close and there are times when the two seem to be interchangeable.

5. Whether any of these tenses, express the four types of action (Successive, Simultaneous, Processive and Continuous Action having terminated) that the Same-Subject Pt.V. do, has not been determined. It appears that the '*having done*' and '*when having done*' declensions could indicate Successive Action and the '*if while having done*' Simultaneous Action, but whether this is actually so, and what the other six declensions mean, has not been determined. But the feeling is that these declensions act differently to the Same-Subject Pt.V.

#### 18.1.2. FORM OF DIFFERENT-SUBJECT PARTICULAR VERBS

Below is a chart of 1st person singular forms of i- '*do*' verb (for full declension see Appendix A). Order of morphemes is as follows: Stem-Act./Stat.-Tense-Person- -ti, -ta, etc.

	<i>'having done'</i>	<i>'when having done'</i>	<i>'if while having done'</i>
<i>Fut. (Act.)</i>	1. Y-ä'ä-ng-m-t*a	4. y-ä'ä-ng-m-t-nä-inä	7. Y-ä'ä-ng-m-ti
<i>(Stat.)</i>	2. Y-atä-ng-m-t*a	5. Yatä-ng-m-t-nä	8. Y-atä-ng-m-ti
<i>(Cont.)</i>	3. yat*oängmt*a	6. yat*oängmt*nä	9. yat*oängmti
<i>Pres. (Act.)</i>			10. y'mti
<i>(Stat.)</i>			11. Ya-ng-m-ti
<i>(Cont.)</i>			12. yat*oängmti
<i>Past (Act.)</i>	13. Y-ä'ä-n-a	16. Y-ä'ä-'n-a	
<i>(Stat.)</i>	14. Y-atä-n-a	17. Y-atä-'n-a	
<i>(Cont.)</i>	15. yat*oäna	18. yat*oä'na	

The following will be noted about the forms of the above:

- (1) the stem occurs word initial (though it may take *n-* prefix).
- (2) *Future and Past Tense* have a morpheme following the stem which seems to indicate action (*-ä'ä-*) or (*-'ä-*) or state (*atä*). This latter is probably an allomorph of the Stative *-ang*, but this is not expressed in Present Tense.
- (3) (a) *-ng-* may indicate Future tense, though *-t\*a* and *-ti* both also mean future tense as they do in other future tenses.
  - (b) *'-* and *-ng* indicate present active and stative as they do in the primary tenses, and *-n-* appears to indicate past tense here.
  - (c) the *-ti* morpheme in future and present carries an *'if'* or *'while'* meaning in both cases, and the *-nä*, *-inä* morpheme a *'when'* meaning (it is undoubtedly connected with *inä* *'when'*, *'time'*).
  - (d) *'-* probably means *'completed'* in Past tense.

18.1.3. PERSON SUFFIXES follow the tense indicator in each case.

(a) *Future and Present* take a series of suffixes which is a type of the (m) series, but has several important differences, so we are designating it as a sub-type and calling it the (mao) series after the 1, 2, 3 singular suffixes. It is as follows:

1S.	-m
2S.	-a
3S.	-o
1DL.	-i
2,3DL.	-hi
1PL.	-oä
2,3PL.	-hu

(b) *Past tense* takes the regular (a), third series (Past Tense) pronoun suffixes.

## 18.2. THE PRIMARY VERB IN THIS CONSTRUCTION

As illustrated in the following sentences the primary verb is always the same tense as the participial verb, i.e. future tense with the future forms, present tense with the present tense forms, and past tense with the past tense forms.

## 18.3. SENTENCES

## 18.3.1. FUTURE (ACTIVE) 'having done'

- aqo weäp\*ÄNGOT\*A ita wIma (I.F.)      *When he comes down I'll give him  
food (lit. 'he having come  
down...').*
- nti weäp\*ÄNGOT\*A wamnga Yat\*o  
ti (F.)      *If you come down we will work (lit.  
'you having come down we will  
work').*
- nti wamnga awa yÄ'ÄNGOT\*A mp\*a  
N.....Vx (pay)      *If you work well I will pay you  
(lit. 'you work well having done  
pay to-you-give-will-I').*
- qaTÄPmqa ti (F.)
- aqo änga tau'na pÄ'ÄNGOT\*A ni      *If he comes to this house, I'll  
ha uTmna (I.F.)      tell him that (ha).*

## 18.3.2. FUTURE (STATIVE) 'having done'

- stopau weTÄNGOT\*A haMÄ      *If it's on the stove, get it!*
- hingo WA'anATÄNGOTANGA ya Wana      *When he sees him he'll run away.*

## 18.3.3. FUTURE ACTIVE 'when having done'

- ita i'yai'YÄNGOÄTNÄ nhuna (I.F.)      *When we have cooked the food you  
(Pl.) will eat it.*
- e'a haväka poe'ÄNGOTNÄ no'IYat\*a  
ti (F.)      *When the water comes flooding it  
will fall down.*

## 18.3.4. FUTURE (STATIVE) 'when having done'

- sä'ä wetängoätnä pana (I.F.)      *He'll come when we are asleep.*
- yä'ä hipi'ya hetängotnä pma  
(I.F.)      *I'll come when it gets dark.*

## 18.3.5. FUTURE (ACTIVE) 'if while having done'

- aqo fa'na so wÄ'ÄNGOTI ni tau      *While he goes that road, I'll go  
uma      this way.*
- haqoa tau pme'ÄNGHUTI, haqoä      *These men will stay while we will  
tana Wäno (I.F.)      go with them.*
- pmeäkngo nÄ'ÄNGOTI wa'antni'i      *If the flies eat the sore, that  
anga quyv'a ti      is bad.*

## 18.3.6. FUTURE (STATIVE) 'if while coming down'

stopau qi weTÄNGOTI ta Mitna hu

*Leave it on the stove and get the  
firewood (lit. 'stove-let-it-be-  
while it lies-firewood-get-go').*

aqo tau pmetängoti haina huwi

*He'll stay here, only you (all)  
go!*

#### 18.3.7. PRESENT ACTIVE AND STATIVE

aqo Noeäp0'OTI ni ha uTma (I.F.)

*If he is coming down I will tell  
him.*

sä'ä weNGHUTI muTa hi (Imp.Neg.)  
(N-Vx) (to-them-not-talk-do)

*If they are sleeping, don't (YOU)  
talk to them.*

aqo wamnga y0'OTI ni mi'ya ima

*If he's working I won't.*

aqo tau'na yäp0'OTI ni wIma

*If he comes here I'll give it to  
him.*

#### 18.3.8. PAST ACTIVE AND STATIVE

e'ä ankaiyau yäpÄ'NA amä'ä  
haqo waimpoka qanTAPanqa  
ti (P.2.)

*As I was coming up Angaya River a  
man gave me a fish.*

ni aqoi Wi'YÄ'NA nanat\*ä ti  
(I.P.)

*I having given to him, he ate it.*

a'i pmeTÄ'NA quwIME'ä ti  
aqo ha yÄ'Ä'NA ni kngo qä'l'ya  
ti (P.2.)

*I came to him (he) sitting there.  
When he did that, I cried (lit. 'he-  
like-that-having-done he-I-cry  
struck').*

am napmeä ta ike'Ä'NA tiväka  
qi'i (P.C.)

*As he sat in there he built a fire  
which is smoking.*

#### 18.4. MORE COMPLEX SENTENCES

It is possible to have both participial forms A (Same-Subject) and participial forms B (Different-Subject) present in the one sentence, but no analysis has been done on these sentences. A few examples are listed below:

ita Wi'YÄ'NA naNm'a qUma  
(P.I.)

*I gave him food, he ate it and went  
(lit. 'food to him-having-given  
I-he-having-eaten went-he').*

ni yänga Wi'YÄ'NA au nHE ät\*ä  
qainga fi qaMEÄ'i (P.C.)

*I gave it to him, he put it here,  
and took another (lit. 'I-gift-*

*to him gave here-he put it-again-different-one-he took').*

## 19. COMPLEX CLITIC SENTENCES

From this part of the Grammar onward little time has been spent on analysis, so what is written is in the nature of suggestions only. Conclusions need to be tested and much more work needs to be done.

As mentioned before clitics may be added to verb forms. This construction (verb form plus clitic) is very important structurally. Clitics may be added to:

- (1) primary verbs (a relatively infrequent use);
- (2) tertiary verbs;
- (3) secondary verbs Type 1, as will be seen later.

### 19.1. CLITICS SUFFIXED TO PRIMARY VERBS

Only the personalising clitics and *-ma* 'only' have been found suffixed to primary verbs, but only to the *ti* tense verbs and their occurrence is infrequent. This is a tentative analysis only, as it seems possible that the addition of the clitic changes these verbs to a medial form with the verb particle *ti* becoming the sentence final form.

*qImanqon ti (Hab.) I am the one who always does.*

#### 19.1.1. SENTENCES

*aqoä änkinä qäPu'wOÄ ti (P.2.) They are the ones who came yesterday.*

*yangäinä qUWanqON ti (D.P.) I went a long time ago.*

*ni hope'a qänmanqON ti (Hab.) I am one who is always eating kaukau.*

#### 19.1.2. GROUP PRONOUN SUFFIXES

To give some idea of the wide usage of personalising clitics and their compounds there are listed below two paradigms with masculine and feminine personalising clitics, plus, in dual and plural numbers, *group pronoun suffixes* (for Group Pronouns see Appendix E). These suffixes show the group relationship of two or more persons concerned. In the above cases, the group pronoun suffixes of brothers and sisters has been outlined. The paradigms are of Habitative Aspect of *-i* 'do' stem. The meaning is, for dual, 'We, you, they two brothers/sisters, are the ones who always do', and, for plural, 'All we, you, they, brothers/sisters

are the ones who always do'.

	MASCULINE (BROTHERS)	FEMININE (SISTERS)
1S.	qimanqon ti	qimanqn ti
2S.	qimangoi ti	qimangi ti
3S.	qimanqo ti	qimanqi ti
1DL.	qimanqoeäi ti	qimanqosäi ti
2DL.	qimangiyaqoängui ti	qimangiyasängui ti
3DL.	qimangiyaqoä'u ti	qimangiyasä'u ti
1PL.	qimanqonai ti	qimanqi'yonai ti
2PL.	qimanguwo'hen ti	qimanguwi'yohen ti
3PL.	qimanguwo'ä ti	qimanguwi'yoä ti

## 19.2. CLITICS SUFFIXED TO TERTIARY VERBS

Clitics added to tertiary verbs do not alter the sentence structure; they add some slight meaning to the overall sentence meaning.

### 19.2.1. TERTIARY VERBS SUFFIXED BY -nga

The most common clitic occurring with tertiary verb forms is -nga. It adds emphasis to the tertiary verb, giving something of the following meaning: *'having done THAT, then so and so'*. -nga also acts as a sentence pause (like a comma) especially when it is reduplicated several times. The following paradigm of -nga suffixed to the 'do' stem of the Successive Action particle may prove helpful to learn:

1S.	nimnga
2S.	ninga
3S.	ni'ya
1DL.	niyä'ä ni'yä
2,3DL.	nhinga
1PL.	niyä'ä, ni'yä
2,3PL.	nhiunga

It will be noted that -nga becomes -'a in places.

#### 19.2.1.1. SENTENCES

ita ha naMEÄtNGA, mp\*a maME'ä  
 qImanga heänqa (Hab.)  
 (process of food getting)  
 aqo ha Yä'ä'naNGA, ni pate'a  
 qut\*a ti

*Getting your food that way, you  
 didn't get much pay.*

*He having done that, I got  
 angry with him.*

ha nHE'aNGANGA, ita ha naMEÄtNGANGA, mpanganga na'a maME'ä qimanga heänqa, qämnga hivä'u'na aqo yäp*ängot*anga ni wlma	<i>If you get your food that way, obviously you didn't get much pay for two months. If he comes up I'll give it to him.</i>
aqo wamnga hanga nHE'aNGA moeäp*a yat*a ti (F.)	<i>Since he has work he will not come down.</i>

## 19.2.2. OTHER CLITICS SUFFIXED TO TERTIARY VERBS

## 19.2.2.1. -untä 'from'

änga YAMAKä'naUNTÄ qoäpta qI'YAI'ya ti (-untä here means 'from that time')	<i>He made the house and from thence he dug a hole.</i>
--	---

## 19.2.2.2. -'ma 'concerning'

nt*a pate'a Täänga'MA qaTI'ya aqo weäpä'MA qaTI'ya	<i>I'm speaking of your talking angrily. I'm speaking about his coming down.</i>
---	--

## 19.2.2.3. -inä 'when', 'then'

This suffix has been discussed in Appendix F.1. It is not strictly a clitic but is discussed here because it behaves in much the same way as the clitics do.

piya na'IYatINÄ änga tau piya qä'lmanqa ti (Hab.)	<i>When it rains, the rain comes in this house.</i>
pnqa haitna niyatngINÄ atita qimanga ti (Hab.)	<i>When you put it away, how do you always do it?</i>
qatä'ä hna niyatä'INÄ qO'IYanqa ti (D.P.)	<i>When we were still cutting grass, I fell off (the hillslope).</i>
qänga nuwatmngINÄNGA qofe'ä qINmanqa ti	<i>When I go walking I put on shoes.</i>
ni namä nOEÄPm ta'i nHAI mngINÄ yä'ä nUma (I.F.)	<i>When I've brought it down and put it here, I'll go.</i>

Note: clitics are never added to the Continuous Action having Terminated Tertiary forms.



PART THREE:

C O M P O U N D   S E N T E N C E S



## INTRODUCTION

Compound sentences introduce secondary verb forms. These sentences differ from simple and complex sentences because they contain:

- (1) verbs of secondary rank which form subordinate clauses of varying types;
- (2) verbs of tertiary rank signifying type of action;
- (3) verbs of primary rank which form the principal clause of the sentence.

In other words, compound sentences contain two or more clauses. Time has not permitted analysis in Sentence types for this section but below is a tentative analysis of the behaviour of secondary verbs.

## SECONDARY VERBS

There are two types of secondary verbs.

**TYPE 1.** *Primary Verbs occurring sentence medially* (with some changes of form) and becoming secondary verbs, because

- (1) they fill a secondary verb spot, and
- (2) some of the changes in their form reveal they are now no longer of primary status.

These comprise all except two of the primary verb forms.

(Immediate Future and Past 1 never occur as secondary verbs.)

**TYPE 2.** *q- Prefix Series.* There are four conjugations in this series:

Conditional (future tense plus q-)

Distant Past

Habitative

Dubitative.

These tenses usually occur in conditional clauses and consequently are attached to a clause carrying future meaning as '*If... had been, then... would be*'.

20. COMPOUND SENTENCES: TYPE 1 - PRIMARY VERBS OCCURRING SENTENCE  
MEDIALLY

SENTENCE TYPE 8, Cl. 1: Subordinate Cl. (containing Secondary Verb)  
+ Cl. 2 (containing Primary Verb)

20.1. FORM OF TYPE 1. SECONDARY VERBS

The form of these verbs is like their primary verb form, but again there is a distinction between the *ti* and non-*ti* tenses.

20.1.1. NON-*ti* TENSES

Only three of the five non-*ti* tenses occur as Secondary verb forms: Present Continuous, Stative Present, and Stative Continuous. In each case the secondary sentence medial form differs from the (n) to the (a), (qa) series as happened in the obvitative mood with these tenses. In fact, these forms used sentence finally form Obvitative. Present Continuous changes to (a) series and the other two tenses to (qa) series. The secondary verb form of the three tense/aspects is as follows:

	P.C. of <i>weäp-</i>	S.P. <i>we-</i>	S.C. <i>we-</i>
	<i>I, the one that is coming down.</i>	<i>I, the one who is lying down.</i>	<i>I, who have been going down.</i>
1S.	<i>qoeäp*a</i>	<i>qoenqa</i>	<i>qoet*onqa</i>
2S.	<i>qoeäpknga</i>	<i>qoenga</i>	<i>qoet*onga</i>
3S.	<i>qoeäp*a</i>	<i>qoenqa</i>	<i>qoet*onqa</i>
1DL.	<i>qoeäp*o</i>	<i>qoenqo</i>	<i>qoet*onqo</i>
2,3DL.	<i>qoeäp*iya</i>	<i>qoengiya</i>	<i>qoet*ongiya</i>
1PL.	<i>qoeäp*o</i>	<i>qoenqo</i>	<i>qoet*onqo</i>
2,3PL.	<i>qoeäp*uwa</i>	<i>qoenguwa</i>	<i>qoet*onguwa</i>

The two Stative forms also have an *n-* prefixed form of this verb: *noenqa* 'I've been sleeping' and *noet\*onqa* 'I've been going down'. These two forms could be called Immediate Past Perfect Stative and Immediate Past Perfect Stative Continuous.

20.1.2. *ti* TENSES

These tenses retain just the same form as they do when occurring as primary verbs except they drop the *ti*. These Secondary Verb forms then are as follows:

Past 2	qoeäpa	<i>I came down.</i>
Distant Past	qoeäpanqa	<i>I came down a long time ago.</i>
Habitulative	qoeäpmanqa	<i>I am always coming down.</i>
Past Comp. Habitulative	qoeäpä'na	<i>I have been always coming down.</i>
Past Comp. StativeHab.	qapmetä'na	<i>I always lived.</i>

It will be noted that these are the same forms that occur with the Obvitative Mood (plus heänqa). The Distant Past also has an n- prefix form niyanqa which occurs as the V.2. in Negative constructions when the verb that takes the Negative is a Stative verb. aqo mapme'ä niyanqa ti 'he wasn't here' and ni sä'ä noenqa ti 'I've been sleeping'.

## 20.2. OCCURRENCE

Secondary forms occur sentence medially -

- (a) without clitics;
  - (b) with clitics (these are in capitals in the sentences below);
- structurally both types are similar; the clitic just adds some slight difference of meaning.

## 20.3. CLAUSE TYPES FORMED BY TYPE 1 SECONDARY VERBS

From a hurried analysis it appears that secondary verb clauses fill either a noun or an adverb 'spot' in the language. The noun may be either subject or object of the verb. Hence, three distinct types of clauses result:

- (1) noun clauses subject of verb;
- (2) noun clauses object of verb;
- (3) adverb clauses extensions of verb.

### 20.3.1. SENTENCES: NOUN CLAUSE SUBJECT OF VERB

SUBJECT (S.V.)	PREDICATE (P.V.)	
Noun Clause		
ankinä namä qäp*a (P.2.)	tiya qoe	<i>The one I brought yesterday is here (lit. 'lies').</i>
ni änga qiyamakanqaNGA	quyv'a ti	<i>The house I made is no good.</i>
hope'a qoeäpanqaNGA (D.P.)	a'i qoe	<i>The kaukau I brought down is there.</i>
käta u'wa a qätat*onqa	nqa ti	<i>The car that is humming is mine.</i>

SUBJECT (S.V.)	PREDICATE (P.V.)	
Noun Clause		
ipango namiyatmnga (I.P.)	fa fi'ya ti	<i>The pitpit I plaited is holey.</i>
mpokisi ni namä qäp*aMA (P.2.)	qoe	<i>Only the one box I brought is there.</i>

Compare the first sentence above with the following sentence where the verb carries a personalising clitic:

änkinä qäp\*on ti *I am one who came yesterday.*

#### 20.3.2. SENTENCES: NOUN CLAUSE OBJECT OF VERB

SUBJECT	OBJECT	PREDICATE	
Noun Clause			
nti	hope'a a q0Enqa (S.)	hamä (Imp.)	<i>Take the kaukau that lies there!</i>
ni	aqo qoeäpanqa'ma (D.P.)	qati'ya	<i>I'm speaking of his coming down.</i>
	inga mä'ä qätat*on- qa'MA (S.C.)	qaTI'yo	<i>We're talking about the bird that is calling.</i>
	wamnga qiyatonQ0I (S.C.)	witna namä hu (V-Vx)	<i>Take it and give it to the one working!</i>
	mpuka ä qä'ätanga (S.)	nTÄPU	<i>Give me the book you are holding!</i>

#### 20.3.3. SENTENCES: ADVERB CLAUSE MODIFYING A VERB

ADVERB CLAUSE	PREDICATE	
aqo qapmeänqau (S.C.)	hai	<i>Put it where he's sitting!</i>
aqoä wamnga qiyat*onguwa- u'na (S.C.)	qu'wa (P.C.)	<i>They are going to the place where they work.</i>
wamnga qiyat*onqaU'NA (S.C.)	naMÄ hu	<i>Take it to where he's working!</i>
änga qapmämanqau (Hab.)	qoe (S.)	<i>It is on the house I live in.</i>

#### 20.4. TYPE 1. SECONDARY VERBS IN OTHER KINDS OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

Secondary Verbs also occur when two clauses come together, the second of which substitutes for ti. Study these sentences, ti and ti subst. clause.

nai ha qimanqo	ti	<i>We used to do that.</i>
nai ha QIMANQO	anuwa fi qapmeängo	<i>We used to do that but now we don't (lit. 'now-nothing-live').</i>
änkinä namä qäpa	ti	<i>I brought it yesterday.</i>
änkinä namä QÄPA	anuwa äta näma qu'wa	<i>I brought it yesterday, now I'm taking it away again.</i>

#### 20.4.1. ANOTHER TYPE OF V1-V2x

Note loss of *ti* in the following new type of *V-Vx* where *V1* is Past tense (without the *ti*) and *V2* is Present Continuous tense.

*V1 Past      V2 Pres.Cont.*

wekäntau'na	qu'wa	qap*i	<i>She's coming from going to Wekanta.</i>
ma, ya hivä'u fati	qapme'ä	qap*a	<i>I stayed three days and then came (spoken as a person arrives).</i>

#### 20.4.2. Note, too, clitic attached to *V1* of the regular *V-Vx*:

ha ymqa'MA qi'ya      *I'm going for the purpose of doing it.*

COMPARE:

ha yma qi'ya      *I'm going to do it.*

### 21. COMPOUND SENTENCES: TYPE 2 - '- SERIES SECONDARY VERB SENTENCES

SENTENCE TYPE 8, Cl. 1: (S-V) + Cl.2: (P.V.)

#### 21.1. CONDITIONAL OR FUTURE PERFECT

This has been called 'Future with *q-* prefix' since it is declined the same as the future tense with the addition of *q-* prefix, and loss of *ti* verb particle, viz.

#### CONJUGATION OF 'do' STEM

1S.	qimqa	1DL.	qit*o
2S.	qit*a	2,3DL.	qhit*a
3S.	qiyat*a	1PL.	qiyät*o
		2,3PL.	qhiut*a

It is difficult to pin the meaning down precisely but this form is often used if some conditions are fulfilled in the future, then as a result of that, or subsequent to it, something else will happen in the future, e.g. *'If you go to Bulolo to work (result) we won't see you'*. Sometimes, as in the last two sentences listed below, the meaning is a straightout future tense (F., I.F., Future Imperative, etc.). This tense has a very wide use as future examples will show.

### 21.1.1. SENTENCES

pitouu'na qi wamnga'ma QUT*A	<i>If you go to work at Bulolo we</i>
hingo mä'änqa yät*o ti	<i>won't see you.</i>
wamnga'ma qi QUMQA sukuta	<i>If I went to work I would not get</i>
na'anqa mhäimqa heänqa	<i>knowledge (obviously).</i>
äwinä wät*o ti, ymtoinä	<i>We'll go in the morning; if we go</i>
QUWÄT*0 piya nä'i'a'ma	<i>at noon it might rain on us.</i>
ni QUMQA äta natemo'ängmtnä	<i>I'll go and when I return again,</i>
weäp*atna	<i>you come.</i>
qavä QHÄIMQANGANGA äta iwa	<i>When I've bandaged it, don't you</i>
nauyätñ mautni'i (Prohibitive)	<i>dare unravel it and throw it</i>
	<i>away!</i>
sä'ä au QOMQA nauyä'ma	<i>I'll sleep there, then get up and</i>
menhiu'na umqa ti	<i>go to Menhi.</i>
änkinä QAPMÄMQA soinä umqa ti	<i>I'll stay here tomorrow and go the</i>
	<i>day after.</i>

Frequently the particle qi 'suppose' occurs with this form as the following sentences show:

nai hintä qi quwät*o...	<i>...if we go there...</i>
nai'ya wamnga quyv'a qi ä	<i>If we confess our sins to God...</i>
QATOÄT*0...	
(Stem: tau- 'count')	
mataka qi QÄPAT*A, ita	<i>If a rat comes, and eats food...</i>
QÄNAT*A...	

### 21.2. DISTANT FUTURE PERFECTIVE AND DISTANT FUTURE HABITUATIVE PERFECTIVE

The form of these two tenses is the same as that for the subjunctive (the mao) pronoun series plus the suffix -ta. They appear to refer to an act that will have been done in the future or will have been done habitually in the future.

## 21.2.1. Study the following sentences:

äp\*a'ma QUMANGOÄT\*A'MA piyäto  
tä, heve'nau'nanga

*Will we go to Heaven because we  
have always gone to church  
(lit. 'song-concerning because  
we have always gone go up-  
query-to Heaven')?*

wamnga QIYANGMT\*A'MA mp\*a mämqa ti  
quyv'a QIMANGMT\*ANGA mpa mame'ä  
imqa ti

*I will get pay for having worked.  
If I do badly I won't get any  
pay.*

ha QÄTMANGOT\*ANGA ät\*a fi mät\*a  
yat\*a ti

*After having always said that he  
won't say it again.*

## 21.3. DUBITATIVE

The form of the Dubitative is similar to *Pres.Cont.* tense but with (mao) pronoun suffixes instead of (n) series, and -ti 'conditional, dubitative' suffix.

## CONJUGATION OF 'do' STEM

1S. qi'imti *I might do, etc.*

1DL. qi'iti

2S. qi'yati

2,3DL. qi'hiti

3S. qi'yoti

1PL. qi'yoäti

2,3PL. qi'huti

The meaning always expresses doubt and may be translated 'I might', 'I doubt if I will or not', etc. This verb form is a common one, too, occurring as a secondary verb, as in sentences below, or more frequently expressing Dubitative Mood (see Section 22) in a V-Vx. As with the Conditional, the primary verb is always in the future tense.

## 21.3.1. SENTENCES

ni mä'änqa ti, ha QI'IMTI wamnga  
ni'imti'yä napm yma

*I don't know after working awhile,  
whether I'll do that.*

äpaka QÄT\*OTI ä qoka QÄT\*OTI ni  
mä'änqa ti

*I don't know if it is the female or  
male (bird) calling.*

aqoä wamnga QI'HUTI, wamnga mi'ya  
QI'HUTI, nai mä'änqa ti

*We (all) don't know if they (all)  
are working or not.*

## 22. DUBITATIVE MOOD SENTENCES

Dubitative Mood expresses doubt: '*I might...*' or '*I don't know whether...*'. These sentences frequently express parallel contrasting ideas in sentences such as '*I don't know whether A or B*'. A and B are Dubitative verbs. As in other moods Dubitative Mood is formed differently according to whether a ti of non-ti tense is involved, but seeing doubt implies future time only the future and immediate future tenses are involved. In practically all the examples we have to date, the primary verb is mä'änqa ti '*I don't know*'.

## 22.1. IMMEDIATE FUTURE DUBITATIVE MOOD (NON-ti) TENSES

SENTENCE TYPE: (V1-V2x ± ä ± (V1-V2x) + P.V.

Dubitative	Subject	V1	V2	
V1-V2	ni	näma	qi'imti...	<i>I might soon get it.</i>
			I.F.	

Note that in this V-V construction the stem of V2 is always i- '*do*' stem. When there are two V1-V2x they are frequently joined by ä '*or*'.

## 22.1.1. SENTENCES

äinä weäpana QI'YOTI ninga mä'änqa ti	<i>I don't know when he will come down.</i>
weäpana QI'YOTI ninga mä'änqa ti	<i>I don't know if he will come down.</i>
wamnga YMA QI'IMTI qänga uma qi'imti ni mä'änqa ti	<i>I don't know if I'll work or go walkabout.</i>
fa'na äyu umna QI'IMTIYA namtm qat'onga	<i>I'm standing here wondering which road to take.</i>

## 22.1.2. STATIVE DUBITATIVE

There is a Stative equivalent of qi'yoti, viz. qheängoti, as qhe is the stative counterpart of qi'ya in the sentence final construction. This construction thus consists of V1 Immediate Future and V2 Stative Dubitative of he- '*be*' stem.

## 22.1.3. SENTENCES

nuwhainga QHEÄNGOTI mu'wa nisainga QHEÄNGOTI, ni mä'änqa ti	<i>I don't know whether the two of them left or not.</i>
--	--

nuwhainga QHEÄNGOTIYA tm yätanga qäi'ya	<i>Wondering if they've gone I'm asking you.</i>
e'ä ta fanga QHEÄNGOTIYA tn ä hamai	<i>Feel the water to see if it's hot.</i>
ata, nai nkota aqoi'ya imeä'onai QHEÄNGOÄTIYA namtä quno na'a qamtango	<i>We don;t know if we are God's children but we are thinking much about it.</i>

## 22.2. FUTURE DUBITATIVE MOOD (ti TENSE)

SENTENCE TYPE: (Fut. + V.P. ta) ± ä ± (Fut.T. + V.P. ta) + P.V.

nai meät\*o ta... *We might get it...*

A Dubitative ti clause is a simple sentence with 2B type ta 'dubitative' verb particle substituting for ti.

As with V-Vx above, frequently two similar dubitative clauses occur often joined by ä 'or' comparing two or more possibilities.

### 22.2.1. SENTENCES

äinä WEÄPAT*A TA, ninga mä'änqa ti	<i>When he will come down, I don't know.</i>
aqoä'u yä'ä NUWHAINGA TA, mu'wa NISAINGA TA, ni mä'änqa ti	<i>I don't know whether they went or didn't go.</i>
änkinä UMQA TA, soinä UMQA TA, ni hna mä'änqa ti	<i>I don't know if I'll go tomorrow or the next day.</i>
finä QIYANQA TA, änkinä QI'YA TA, aqo mä'änqa ti	<i>He doesn't know if he did it a long time ago or yesterday.</i>

## 23. y- TERTIARY VERBS

### 23.1. OCCURRENCE

We have noted how frequently the y-, i- 'do' stem occurs in verb constructions. It occurs as the primary verb in:

- (1) negative expressions;
- (2) most of the verb-verb expressions;
- (3) a big percentage of the noun-verb expressions;
- (4) in the repetitive action verb expressions (see 17.7.).

When the above constructions occur sentence medially, they occur in a subordinate clause and the i-, y- stem is declined as a tertiary verb,

either same, or different person. The Tertiary forms of *y-* stem are listed in Appendix A.3.

SENTENCE TYPE 9: Cl.1 (*Tertiary Verb y- Stem*) + Cl.2: (P.V.)'

The sentence type formed by the above constructions consists of one of the following subordinate clauses and a main clause:

	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
SENTENCE TYPE 9A	Cl.1 ( <i>Neg.Aux. + T.V. (y-)</i> ) +	Cl.2
9B	Cl.1 ( <i>V + T.V. (y-)</i> )	+ Cl.2
9C	Cl.1 ( <i>N + T.V. (y-)</i> )	+ Cl.2
9D	Cl.1 ( <i>R.A.V. + T.V. (y-)</i> )	+ Cl.2

## 23.2. SENTENCE TYPES

### 23.2.1. 9A: Cl.1 (*Neg.Aux. + T.V. (y-)*) + Cl.2

#### (a) Different-Subject

ma, ha qita piya MÄ'I'YA	<i>You having done that then if it</i>
YÄ'ÄNGOTNÄNGA e'ä nayvatn qoä	<i>doesn't rain, you can get water</i>
mhau e'ä hoe'ät*atna	<i>and pour it on the ground.</i>
nkoto MUT*A YÄ'ÄNGOT*A anga	<i>If God had not spoken to them, they</i>
tuwämnga MÄ'I'YA QIYANGHUT*A	<i>would not have written anything.</i>
hengonhe	
ni MÄPE'A YÄ'ÄNGMT*ANGA anga	<i>If I don't die the people will all</i>
nqa amä'ä aqananga phaut*a ti	<i>die for good.</i>

#### (b) Same-Subject

None to hand but be on the lookout for them.

### 23.2.2. 9B: Cl.1 (*V + T.V. (y-)*) + Cl.2

This construction always means '*when one is about to do something, as smoke, eat, work, etc.*'.

#### (a) Different-Subject

wamnga ITNA YA'ATi ni ml'ya	<i>If you are going to work, I won't.</i>
Imna	
wamnga IMNA YÄ'INÄ qhoä ha	<i>When I'm preparing to work, he talks</i>
qänTmanqa ti	<i>to me.</i>

## (b) Same-Subject

None to hand.

## 23.2.3. 9C: Cl.1 (N + T.V. (y-)) + Cl.2

## (a) Different-Subject

WAMNGA ipäka YÄ'ÄNGHUT*A simpu	<i>When you're finished working the</i>
aqoä niyäphu päipa namä hut*a	<i>Chimbus will come and carry away</i>
ti	<i>the pipe.</i>
nti pateä WÄSI YÄ'ÄNGATI aqo	<i>While you wash the dishes, he will</i>
ymiu'na wana	<i>go down there.</i>
nti ÄP*A TÄ'ÄNGATNÄNGA, mät*a	<i>When you are singing, they two</i>
i'hina (Fut.Imp.)	<i>should not talk to you.</i>

## (b) Same-Subject

MTA Ni'YÄNGOTNÄ inä ita nmna	<i>When I'm hungry then I will pick it</i>
mtmqä ti	<i>and eat it.</i>
WAMNGA Ni'IMTI'YÄ ipäka NIMNGA	<i>I'll work awhile and when I've</i>
ita nmna	<i>finished I'll eat.</i>

## 23.2.4. 9D: No examples to hand.

## 24. he- TERTIARY VERBS

SENTENCE TYPE 10: Cl.1 ((±Subj.etc. + S.V.) + he-) + Cl.2

Sentence Type 10 consists of a subordinate clause containing a secondary verb joined to a main clause containing a primary verb by a tertiary verb stem he-.

The Stative stem he- 'be' occurs extensively in compound sentences. As far as a hurried analysis has gone, it seems that there are two different types of he- constructions each of which has a difficult function.

## 24.1. TYPE 1. he- TERTIARY FORMS

These appear to be a number of conjugations, which are the Stative equivalents to the y- 'do' series discussed in Sections 17. and 18, i.e. they are Stative Same and Different-Subject tertiary verb forms.

To date four different conjugations have been noted, the 3rd P.Sing. of which are as follows:

FUTURE CONDITIONAL	Active	Stative
	1. he-'-äng-o-ta	2. he-tä-ng-o-ti
PAST	3. he-'ä-'n-a	4. he-tä-'a

1 and 2 mean 'if', 'when', 'having become'  
 3 and 4 mean 'it became'.

The same subject form is *nhe'a* for both Future and Past.

#### 24.1.1. OCCURRENCE

These forms occur sentence medially, when the tertiary form describes a state rather than an action, often the state is that of a physical universe, as the state of light or darkness. All *he-* forms carry the thought 'it is a fact' or 'since it is a fact'. Frequently a *he-* form is the sentence medial (stative) substitute for *ti*. Compare the pairs of sentences below (note clitic suffixation, too).

#### 24.1.2. DIFFERENT-SUBJECT SENTENCES

<i>aqo ha niyata ti</i> (I.P.)	<i>He did it that way.</i>
<i>aqo ha niyata HETÄ'NA nai mu'wa yäno</i>	<i>Since he did that we won't go.</i>
<i>fa'na awäka qHÄlmanqa ti</i> (Hab.)	<i>The road is always wet.</i>
<i>fa'na awäka qhäimanqa HETÄ'MA mu'wa imna</i>	<i>Because the road is always wet I won't go.</i>
<i>nti wamnga qoä awa HETÄ'NA ti'in</i>	<i>Is it good ground where your garden is?</i>
<i>ni wamnga hanga het*ängmtanga moeäp*a it*a ti</i>	<i>If I have work you won't come down.</i>

#### 24.1.3. SAME-SUBJECT SENTENCES (?)

<i>nai mu'wa qimanqo ti</i> (Hab.)	<i>We did not always go.</i>
<i>nai mu'wa qimanqo ha NHE'A qi nuwäno qi'yo</i>	<i>Even though we don't usually go, we will go.</i>
<i>ipango ä namiyatmnga HETÄ'MA qati'ya</i>	<i>I'm speaking of the fact that I plaited the pitpit.</i>
<i>aqo awo'o HETÄ'MA qati'ya</i>	<i>I'm speaking of the fact that he is good.</i>
<i>ipango ä namiyatmnga fa fi'ya hetä'ma smnga mhe'ä ymna wamnga hanga ti</i>	<i>Because the pitpit I plaited is holey, I won't put it on the wall. I have work.</i>

umqa NHE'A wamnga hangon  
hetä'ma mu'wa ima

*I could go, but since I have work, I  
won't go.*

#### 24.1.4. OTHER SENTENCES

hipi'ya HETÄ'NA mu'wa qi'ya ti  
yä'ä.hipi'ya HE'Ä'NAU qäp\*a ti  
(P.S.)

*Since it was dark, I didn't go.  
I came after it got dark (lit. 'be-  
came to darkness').*

hipi'ya HE'ÄNGOT\*A weäpana  
tanga hna HETÄNGOT\*A napata ti

*When it is night, he will come.  
If there's still sickness, he'll  
come.*

yesusu'o hna moeäp\*a HETÄ'INÄ,  
qä'iyanguwa ti (D.P.)

*They (Bible authors) wrote even be-  
fore Jesus came (lit. 'still-not-  
come-down-when it was').*

#### 24.2. TYPE 2: OTHER he- FORMS

It seems that the other he- forms usually do not decline, but that they act as function words in certain types of constructions.

he'engotiyä 'If it were a fact that' occurs in Subjunctive Mood sentences.

hengoti 'If it is a fact'. This does decline regularly, as a Present Stative Different-Person Tertiary form like yangoti.

hetängoti 'It being so'.

##### 24.2.1. he'engotiyä SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD SENTENCES

he'engotiyä (or hengotiyä) frequently occurs with a negative clause expressing the thought 'If something had not happened (which, however, did happen) then...', as 'If it had not rained yesterday we would not have got wet'. When he'engotiyä occurs with a positive clause, it means 'If such and such were an accomplished fact, then such and such would follow as a fact', as 'If he had come, we would all have gone together'. There are two slightly differing sentence types.

##### 24.2.2. SENTENCE TYPE 10A: Cl.1 (± Neg.Aux. + S.V.) + he'engotiyä + Cl.2 (Subj.Mood)

Cl.1                    T.V.                    Cl.2 (P.V.)

aqo niyäp\*a    he'engotiyä            hingo qu'wanät\*o hengenhe (P.2.)

*If he had come up yesterday we would have seen him.*

The secondary verbs occurring in this sentence type we have noted, have been q- series verbs (especially Dubitative and Conditional), the Immediate Past and also hanga 'have'. The second clause is always Subjunctive Mood as discussed, in Section 15, hengenhe occurring with ti tense verbs. It is interesting to note that in the above sentence both he- verb expressions are substitutes for ti; hengenhe on the primary level, and he'engotiyä on the tertiary level.

#### 24.2.3. SENTENCES

äp*a änga miyamak*a qiyangoät*a HE'ENGOTIYÄ äp*a'ma mäp*a qiyät*o hengenhe	<i>If we had not built the church we would not be coming to sing.</i>
aqo moeäp*a qiyangot*a HE'ENGOTIYÄ nai mä'änqa hengoänhe	<i>If He had not come down we would still not know God.</i>
matä'o qiyäpanghut*a HE'ENGOTIYÄ äp*a qätanghut*a hengenhe	<i>If the masters had come up we would have had a singsing.</i>
yesusu'o nai'na mäpe'a qiyangot*a he'engotiyä nainga napetä'ä aqananga qäpamar,goät*a hengenhe (Hab.)	<i>If Jesus had not died for us, when we died we would be dying permanently.</i>
mu'wa niyatmnga HE'ENGOTIYÄ yä'ä sä'ä wengmhe	<i>If I had not gone I would still be sleeping.</i>

#### 24.2.4. SENTENCE TYPE 10B: Cl.1 (ti clause) + he'engotiyä + Cl.2 (Subj.Mood)

In the above sub-sentence type Clause 1 contains what would be a simple ti type sentence if uttered in isolation; he'engotiyä is the medial substitute for ti.

#### 24.2.5. SENTENCES

wamnga hanga HE'ENGOTIYÄ mäp*a qiyangot*a hengenhe	<i>If he was working (lit. 'had work') he would not have come.</i>
---	--

#### 24.3. hengoti SENTENCES

Though hengoti can be declined, most sentences carry the 3rd P.Sing. form (as above). hengoti occurs linking three different types of Cl.1 to a future tense primary clause.

## 24.3.1. DIFFERENT-SUBJECT SENTENCE TYPE 10A

Cl.1 (Conditional Verb) + hengoti + Cl.2 (Future Tense P.V.)

Cl.1 (Conditional) (T.V.) Cl.2 (Future)

hosi namä qäpat\*a hengoti ni hmpu mämqa ti *If the horse will have brought it, I'll get one.*

päsi qamoeäimqa HENGOTI aqo hingo *If I send a letter he'll look at it.*  
wa'anat\*a ti

änkinä qiyäpmqa HENGOTI hingo *If I (will have) come up tomorrow, I'll see you.*  
qä'änmqa ti

matä'o mätemo'a qiyat\*a HENGOTI *If the master does not arrive, we two will go together.*  
anga aqa wit\*o ti

ni nomnga HENGOTI ita nmna (I.F.) *If I go down I can eat.*

niyäpmnga hengoti hingo qä'änmna *If I come up I will see you.*  
(I.F.)

ta nIKÄmnga HENGOTI ita YA'Imqa *If I light a fire, I can cook a meal.*  
ti

## 24.3.2. SAME-SUBJECT SENTENCES TYPE 10C

Cl.1 (Participial Verb A) + hengoti + Cl.2 (Future Tense)

In this construction the participial form is frequently suffixed by the clitic, -nga.

päsi NA'IMNGA HENGOTI nameoäimqa *If I write a letter I'll send it.*  
ti

qapä'o pme'ä haqo hingo NU'wanÄ'Ä *If we see a Kapau man we will say that to him.*  
HENGOTI ha utit\*o ti

ni wamnga hanga NIMNGA HENGOTI *If I have work, I won't come down.*  
moeäp\*a imqa ti

## 24.3.3. SENTENCE TYPE 10B: Cl.1 (ti Clause) + hengoti + Cl.2 (Fut.)

Clause 1 is similar to Sentence 10B discussed in 24.2.4. except that hengoti replaces he'engotiyä and Cl.2 is Future Tense, not Subjunctive Mood.

nti mä'änqa HENGOTI qaivä'o nate- *Since you don't know, when the owner comes back I'll ask him.*  
mo'ängotnä inä yät\*anga wimqa ti

sopa hanga HENGOTI hewa i panma *If I have soap, I'll wash.*



weäpmqa ti *I will come down.*  
 aqo weäpmqa QANA qat\**i* *'I will come down', he said.*

qo also occurs as a substitute for ti when a person is calling out or shouting his message. The -na of qana is dropped and qa becomes qo.

ni änkinä yäpmqa QO *I'll come up tomorrow! (man shouting)*

The occurrence of the three suffixes has not been fully analysed but the following are tentative rules for their occurrence:

- ya after verb forms ending in u, i, and sometimes o.
- va " Obvitative verb forms; 2nd and 3rd Person Pl. of Pres. Stative, Pres.Cont., and Past 1 tenses; and Fut. tense used without ti (26.2.).
- ea " some Imperative verb forms ending in ä or o or a.
- nä " Nasals, and all vowels except u and i in all other end quotative positions (except for qana).

### 25.3. SENTENCES

awa qimangmt*a hengoti awa	<i>If I've worked well, he'll say, 'You did well'.</i>
qimanga QANA ntat*a ti	
änga quyv'a qana qat* <i>i</i>	<i>'The house is no good', he said.</i>
fa'na äyu umna qi'imtiYA namtm	<i>I'm standing here wondering which</i>
qat*onga	<i>road to take.</i>
hampu	<i>Come!</i>
hampuYA qantma (P.I.)	<i>'Come', he said to me.</i>
awa heänqaVA natata päütäsi	<i>Saying, 'It is good', he baptized</i>
qianqa ti (Obv.)	<i>her.</i>
awa qäpiyaVA neätat*a ti	<i>He said to us two, 'It is good that</i>
(Obv.)	<i>you have come'.</i>
aqoä hangami'ya qäpaVA qat* <i>i</i>	<i>'They are coming quickly', he said.</i>
(P.C.) (3Pl.)	
ni qapaNA qati'ya (P.C.)(1S.)	<i>'I am coming', I am saying.</i>
a hamäEA, qati'ya	<i>'Take it', I am saying.</i>
a hamäiYA qati'ya	<i>'You (Pl.) take it', I am saying.</i>
sä'ä ho	<i>Go to sleep!</i>
sä'ä hoEA tätn	<i>'Go to sleep!', did you say?</i>
toYA qat* <i>i</i>	<i>'Hey, you!' he said.</i>
apikoEA, qat* <i>i</i>	<i>'Father (direct address)', he said.</i>
ntawäEA qat* <i>i</i> (ntawäe + -ea	<i>'My cousin!' he said.</i>
one e is lost)	

atät*a iwa tit*aVA qat*i	'Don't you lie (Fut.)!' he said.
nti hingo tu'wanangn	Do you see?
nti hingo tu'wanangnA qati'ya	'Do you see?' I'm saying.
yä'ä qu'wiYA qat*i, fa'namNA	'He's going', he said, 'on the road'. (expressing an afterthought)
äm'na nuwatn i'inA qat*i	'Where are you going?' he said.
Speaker: ni änkinä umqa ti	I'm going tomorrow.
Interpreter: ni änkinä umqa qaNO	'I'm going tomorrow', he said.

NOTE: -na becomes -no when utterance is a restating of speech just made. Also the qano is usually followed by a glottal.

## 26. THE DIFFERENT USES OF VARIOUS VERB CONSTRUCTIONS

There is a conversational use of Present Continuous Tense, prefixed not by q- but by t- which seems to mean 'the granting of a request', or 'the seeking of permission'. Study these sentences:

ni muti mäma qamtanga	I'd like to take some lemons.
ma, qhui TAME'ÄN	Yes, you can take some.
ita ta TÄNI'IN	Would you like to eat this food?
amä'ä haqo ymiu'na Wa	Let a man go down there.
ma, nti Tu'UN	Will you go?

### 26.1. FUTURE TENSE WITHOUT THE VERB PARTICLE ti

Future tense may occur as a primary verb without the verb particle ti. Its meaning is elusive but it seems to mean something like the following:

Negatively, 'You wouldn't dare' or 'You wouldn't be purposing to do', and positively, 'It is for you to do'.

Study the following sentences:

atäta iwa tIT*A (F. -ti)	You wouldn't be lying, would you?
qui'i pi'ya niyamaktna pTA	You wouldn't be coming to do me harm, would you (lit. 'harm what making you will come')?
aqä awa wIT0 wamnga hangon	I could go, but since I've got work, I
nhaimnga'ma mu'wa Yma	won't go.
nti uTi	You tell him!
hawai, nti utita heänqa	No, you should tell him!

## 26.2. SUCCESSIVE ACTION PARTICIPLE WITHOUT n- PREFIX

This construction has a hortatory meaning, 'let us', though sometimes it seems to mean obligation or allowance. This construction is usually prefixed by ä- if the verb stem begins with a stop or nasal, otherwise, there is no prefix. The following is the conjugation:

t- 'speak'

1S.	ätm	Shall I speak?
2S.	ätn	Shall you speak?
3S.	äta	Shall he speak?
1DL.	ätä	Shall we two speak?
2,3DL.	äthi	Shall you, they two speak?
1Pl.	ätä	Shall we all speak?
2,3Pl.	äthu	Shall you, they all speak?

NOTE: the above forms can also mean 'Let me', 'Let him', etc.

Other forms are as follows:

yäqoe'a ä'lm	Shall I hit the pig? or Permit me to...
äPm	Shall I come?
ita äNm	Let me eat!
äPMÄm	Permit me to sit!
Um	Shall I go?
Ym	Let me do it!
YÄPm	Allow me to come up!

A person may interrupt another's conversation with:

nqa qi ätm 'Let me have my say!' and someone else may agree with  
 aqoi'ya qi äta 'Yes, let him have his say!'  
 äp\*a ät\*a hmpu ätä 'Let us sing some more!'

## 26.3. OCCURRENCE OF SUCCESSIVE ACTION PARTICIPLES WITH -t AND -mt STEMS

From a hurried analysis it appears that when this participial form occurs with its stem either -t 'think' or -mt 'think from within; wonder; consider; etc.' that it carries the specialised meaning of 'desiring; wondering; wishing; intending; concluding incorrectly from evidence given'. The 'thinking about' or 'desiring' is of the action of the subordinate verb. In this construction the participle still carries the idea that the action of the main verb follows that of the participial verb.



A P P E N D I X E S



APPENDIX A

SUPPLEMENTARY VERB CONJUGATIONS

A.1. weäpa- VERB STEM - 'to come down' (Compiled by P. Banfield)

A.1.1. PRIMARY FORMS - NON-ti TENSES

	<i>Immed. Future</i>	<i>Present Cont.</i>	<i>No.1 Past</i>	<i>Pres.Cont. Stative</i>	<i>Pres.Cont. Stat.Obvitat.</i>
1S.	weäpmna	qoeäp*a	qoeäpmanga	qoeäpat*onga	qoeäpat*onqa
2S.	weäptna	qoeäpn	qoeäpmangn	qoeäpatongn	qoeäpatonga
3S.	weäpana	qoeäpi	qoeäpma	qoeäpato	qoeäpatonqa
1DL.	weäpino	qoeäpo	qoeäpmango	qoeäpatongo	qoeäpatonqo
2,3DL.	weäphina	qoeäpi	qoeäpmangi	qoeäpatongi	qoeäpatongi ya
1PL.	weäpäno	qoeäpo	qoeäpmango	qoeäpatongo	qoeäpatonqo
2,3PL.	weäphuna	qoeäpa	qoeäpmanga	qoeäpatonga	qoeäpatonguwa

A.1.2. PRIMARY FORMS - ti TENSES

	<i>Future</i>	<i>Immediate Past</i>	<i>Immed.Past Perf. Cont. Stative</i>	<i>No.2 Past</i>
1S.	weäpmqa ti	noeäpatmnga ti	noeäpat*onqa ti	qoeäp*a ti
2S.	weäpt*a ti	noeäpatnga ti	noeäpatonga ti	qoeäpknga ti
3S.	weäpata ti	noeäpata ti	noeäpatonqa ti	qoeäpa ti
1DL.	weäpito ti	noeäpatä'ä ti	noeäpatonqo ti	qoeäpo ti
2,3DL.	weäphita ti	noeäphainga ti	noeäpatongi ya ti	qoeäpiya ti
1PL.	weäpato ti	noeäpatä'ä ti	noeäpatonqo ti	qoeäpo ti
2,3PL.	weäphuta ti	noeäphaunga ti	noeäpatonqo ti	qoeäpuwa ti

	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>	<i>Past Completed Hab.</i>
1S.	qoeäpanqa ti	qoeäpmanqa ti	qoeäp*ä'na ti
2S.	qoeäpanga ti	qoeäpmanga ti	qoeäpänga ti
3S.	qoeäpanqa ti	qoeäpmanqa ti	qoeäpä'na ti
1DL.	qoeäpanqo ti	qoeäpmanqo ti	qoeäpä'no ti
2,3DL.	qoeäpangiya ti	qoeäpmangiya ti	qoeäpängiya ti
1PL.	qoeäpanqo ti	qoeäpmanqo ti	qoeäpä'no ti
2,3PL.	qoeäpanguwa ti	qoeäpmanguwa ti	qoeäpänguwa ti

## A.1.3. SECONDARY FORMS - q- SERIES

	<i>Fut.Perf. or Conditional</i>	<i>Dubitative</i>	<i>Dist.Future Perf.Act.</i>	<i>Dist.Future Comp. Habit.Perfect</i>
1S.	qoeäpmqa	qoeäpmti	qoeäpangmt*a	qoeäp*ängmt*a
2S.	qoeäpt*a	qoeäp*ati	qoeäpangat*a	qoeäpängata
3S.	qoeäpata	qoeäpoti	qoeäpangota	qoeäpängota
1DL.	qoeäpito	qoeäpiti	qoeäpangita	qoeäpängita
2,3DL.	qoeäphita	qoeäphiti	qoeäpanghita	qoeäpänghita
1PL.	qoeäpätö	qoeäpöäti	qoeäpangoäta	qoeäpängoäta
2,3PL.	qoeäphuta	qoeäphuti	qoeäpanghuta	qoeäpänghuta

*Fut.Habit.Perfect*

1S.	qoeäpmangmt*a	
2S.	qoeäpmangata	(Since -weäp- 'come down' will not occur in
3S.	qoeäpmangota	these Stative Forms I am substituting -we-
1DL.	qoeäpmangita	'go down' which can be Stative when used with
2,3DL.	qoeäpmanghita	sä'ä meaning 'to sleep'.)
1PL.	qoeäpmangoäta	
2,3PL.	qoeäpmanghuta	

## A.1.4. TERTIARY FORMS - CONTINUOUS ACTION HAVING TERMINATED SERIES

	<i>Future Active</i>	<i>('go down') Fut.Stative</i>	<i>Past Active</i>	<i>('go down') Past Stative</i>
1S.	noeäpmti'yä	noengmti'yä	noeäpa'nä	noenga'nä
2S.	noeäp*ati'yä	noengati'yä	noeäp*n'ä	noengn'ä
3S.	noeäpoti'yä	noengoti'yä	noeäpi'yä	noengi'yä
1DL.	noeäpiti'yä	noengiti'yä	noeäpo'nä	noengo'nä
2,3DL.	noeäphiti'yä	noenghiti'yä	noeäp*i'yä	noengi'yä

	<i>Future</i>	<i>('go down')</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>('go down')</i>
	<i>Active</i>	<i>Fut. Stative</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Past Stative</i>
1Pl.	noeäpoäti'yä	noengoäti'yä	noeäpo'nä	noengo'nä
2,3Pl.	noeäphuti'yä	noenghuti'yä	noeäp*a'vä	noenga'vä

## A.1.5. TERTIARY FORMS - SAME ACTOR PARTICIPIAL FORMS

	<i>Successive Action</i>	<i>Processive Action</i>
1S.	noeäpm	noeäpatm
2S.	noeäpn	noeäpatn
3S.	noeäpa	noeäpata
1Dl.	noeäpä	noeäpatä
2,3Dl.	noeäphi	noeäphai
1Pl.	noeäpä	noeäpatä
2,3Pl.	noeäphu	noeäphau

## A.1.6. TERTIARY FORMS - DIFFERENT ACTOR PARTICIPIAL FORMS

	<i>Fut. Active</i>	<i>Fut. Cont. Stat.</i>	<i>Fut. Active</i>	<i>Fut. Cont. Stat.</i>
	<i>'being come</i>	<i>'being in the</i>	<i>'when come</i>	<i>'in the state of</i>
	<i>down'</i>	<i>state of coming</i>	<i>down'</i>	<i>coming down'</i>
		<i>down'</i>		
1S.	weäpängmt*a	weäpat*oängmt*a	weäp*ängmtnä	weäpat*oängmtnä
2S.	weäpängata	weäpatoängata	weäpängatnä	weäpatoängatnä
3S.	weäpängota	weäpatoängota	weäpängotnä	weäpatoängotnä
1Dl.	weäpängita	weäpatoängita	weäpängitnä	weäpatoängitnä
2,3Dl.	weäpänghita	weäpatoänghita	weäpänghitnä	weäpatoänghitnä
1Pl.	weäpängoäta	weäpatoängoäta	weäpängoätnä	weäpatoängoätnä
2,3Pl.	weäpänghuta	weäpatoänghuta	weäpänghutnä	weäpatoänghutnä
	<i>Fut. Act. Cond.</i>	<i>Fut. Cont. Stat. Cond.</i>	<i>Present Active</i>	
	<i>'while coming</i>	<i>'while being in state</i>	<i>Conditional</i>	
	<i>down'</i>	<i>of coming down'</i>		
1S.	weäp*ängmti	weäpat*oängmti	weäpmti	
2S.	weäpängati	weäpatoängati	weäp*ati	
3S.	weäpängoti	weäpatoängoti	weäpoti	
1Dl.	weäpängito	weäpatoängito	weäpiti	
2,3Dl.	weäpänghiti	weäpatoänghiti	weäphiti	
1Pl.	weäpängoäti	weäpatoängoäti	weäpoäti	
2,3Pl.	weäpänghuti	weäpatoänghuti	weäphuti	

	<i>Pres.Cont. Stat.Cond.</i>	<i>Past Active</i>	<i>Past Continuous Stative</i>
1S.	weäpat*ongmti	weäp*ä'na (weäpä'äna)	weäpat*oä'na
2S.	weäpatongati	weäpänga	weäpatoänga
3S.	weäpatongoti	weäpä'na (weäpä'äna)	weäpatoä'na
1DL.	weäpatongiti	weäpä'no (weäpä'äno)	weäpatoä'no
2,3DL.	weäpatonghiti	weäpängiya	weäpatoängiya
1PL.	weäpatongoäti	weäpä'no (weäpä'äno)	weäpatoä'no
2,3PL.	weäpatonghuti	weäpänguwa	weäpatoänguwa

A.1.7. *Future Imperative*

1S.	weäpm'mna
2S.	weäp*atna
3S.	weäpo'ona
1DL.	weäpi'ino
2,3DL.	weäpi'hina
1PL.	weäpo'ana
2,3PL.	weäpu'huna

## A.2. qa- VERB STEM - 'to ford water'

## A.2.1. PRIMARY FORMS - NON-ti TENSES

	<i>Immed. Future</i>	<i>Present Contin.</i>	<i>No.1 Past</i>	<i>Pres.Cont. Stative</i>	<i>Pres.Cont.Stat. Obvitative</i>
1S.	kamna	qake'a	qäkamanga	qaket*onga	qäket*onqa
2S.	katna	qake'en	qäkamangn	qaketongn	qäketonga
3S.	kena	qake'i	qäkama	qaketo	qäketonqa
1DL.	kaino	qake'o	qäkamango	qaketongo	qäketonqo
2,3DL.	khaina	qake'i	qäkamangi	qaketongi	qäketongiya
1PL.	keäno	qake'o	qäkamango	qaketongo	qäketonqo
2,3PL.	khauna	qake'a	qäkamanga	qaketonga	qäketonguwa

## A.2.2. PRIMARY FORMS - ti TENSES

	<i>Future</i>	<i>Immediate Past</i>	<i>Immed. Past Perf. Cont. Stative</i>	<i>No.2 Past</i>
1S.	kamqa ti	naketmnga ti	naket*onqa ti	qäke'a ti
2S.	kat*a ti	naketnga ti	naketonga ti	qäkeknga ti
3S.	keta ti	naketa ti	naketonqa ti	qäke'a ti
1Dl.	kaito ti	naketä'ä ti	naketonqo ti	qäke'o ti
2,3Dl.	khaita ti	nakhainga ti	naketongiya ti	qäke'iya ti
1Pl.	keäto ti	naketä'ä ti	naketonqo ti	qäke'o ti
2,3Pl.	khauta ti	nakheunga ti	naketonguwa ti	qäke'uwa ti

	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>	<i>Past Completed Hab.</i>
1S.	qäkenqa ti	qäkamanqa ti	qake'ä'na ti
2S.	qäkenga ti	qäkamanga ti	qake'änga ti
3S.	qäkenqa ti	qäkamanqa ti	qake'ä'na ti
1Dl.	qäkenqo ti	qäkamanqo ti	qake'ä'no ti
2,3Dl.	qäkengiya ti	qäkamangiya ti	qake'ängiya ti
1Pl.	qäkenqo ti	qäkamanqo ti	qake'ängno ti
2,3Pl.	qäkenguwa ti	qäkamanguwa ti	qake'änguwa ti

#### A.2.3. SECONDARY FORMS - q- SERIES

	<i>Fut.Perf. or Conditional</i>	<i>Dubitative</i>	<i>Dist. Future Perfect</i>
1S.	qäkämqa	qäke'emti	qäkengmt*a
2S.	qäkat*a	qäke'ati	qäkengata
3S.	qäketa	qäke'oti	qäkengota
1Dl.	qäkaito	qäke'iti	qäkengita
2,3Dl.	qäkhaita	qäke'hiti	qäkenghita
1Pl.	qäkeäto	qäke'oäti	qäkengoäta
2,3Pl.	qäkhauta	qäke'huti	qäkenghuta

	<i>Distant Future Comp.Habit.Perf.</i>	<i>Future Habit. Perfect</i>
1S.	qäke'ängmt*a	qäkamangmt*a
2S.	qäke'ängata	qäkamangata
3S.	qäke'ängota	qäkamangota
1Dl.	qäke'ängita	qäkamangita
2,3Dl.	qäke'änghita	qäkamanghita
1Pl.	qäke'ängoäta	qäkamangoäta
2,3Pl.	qäke'änghuta	qäkamanghuta

## A.2.4. TERTIARY FORMS - CONTINUOUS ACTION HAVING TERMINATED

	<i>Future Active</i>	<i>Future Habit.</i>	<i>Past Active</i>	<i>Past Habit.</i>
1S.	nake'emti'yä	nake'ängmti'yä	nake'a'nä	nake'änga'nä
2S.	nake'ati'yä	nake'ängati'yä	nake'e'nä	nake'ängn'ä
3S.	nake'oti'yä	nake'ängoti'yä	nake'i'yä	nake'ängi'yä
1DL.	nake'iti'yä	nake'ängiti'yä	nake'o'nä	nake'ängo'nä
2,3DL.	nake'hiti'yä	nake'änghiti'yä	nake'i'yä	nake'ängi'yä
1PL.	nake'oäti'yä	nake'ängoäti'yä	nake'o'nä	nake'ängo'nä
2,3PL.	nake'huti'yä	nake'änghuti'yä	nake'a'vä	nake'änga'vä

## A.2.5. TERTIARY FORMS - SAME ACTOR PARTICIPIAL FORMS

	<i>Successive Action</i>	<i>Processive Action</i>
1S.	nakam	naketm
2S.	nakan	naketn
3S.	nake	naketa
1DL.	nakeä	naketä
2,3DL.	nakhai	nakhei
1PL.	nakeä	naketä
2,3PL.	nakhau	nakheu

## A.2.6. TERTIARY FORMS - DIFFERENT ACTOR PARTICIPIAL FORMS

	<i>Future Active</i> 'having forded'	<i>Fut.Cont.Stative</i> 'being in the state of fording'	<i>Future Active</i> 'when having forded'
1S.	ke'ängmt*a	ket*oängmt*a	ke'ängmtnä
2S.	ke'ängata	ketoängata	ke'ängatnä
3S.	ke'ängota	ketoängota	ke'ängotnä
1DL.	ke'ängita	ketoängita	ke'ängitnä
2,3DL.	ke'änghita	ketoänghita	ke'änghitnä
1PL.	ke'ängoäta	ketoängoäta	ke'ängoätnä
2,3PL.	ke'änghuta	ketoänghuta	ke'änghutnä

	<i>Fut.Cont.Stative</i> 'when being in state of fording'	<i>Fut.Act.Cond.</i> 'while fording'	<i>Fut.Cont.Stat.Cond.</i> 'while being in state of fording'
1S.	ket*oängmtnä	nake'ängmti	naket*oängmti
2S.	ketoängatnä	nake'ängati	naketoängati

	<i>Fut. Cont. Stative</i> 'when being in state of fording'	<i>Fut. Act. Cond.</i> 'while fording'	<i>Fut. Cont. Stat. Cond.</i> 'while being in state of fording'
3S.	ketoängotnä	nake'ängoti	naketoängoti
1DL.	ketoängitnä	nake'ängito	naketoängito
2,3DL.	ketoänghitnä	nake'änghiti	naketoänghiti
1PL.	ketoängoätinä	nake'ängoäti	naketoängoäti
2,3PL.	ketoänghutnä	nake'änghuti	naketoänghuti
	<i>Pres. Active</i> <i>Conditional</i>	<i>Pres. Cont.</i> <i>Stat. Cond.</i>	<i>Past Active</i> <i>Past Cont.</i> <i>Stative</i>
1S.	ke'emti	ket*ongmti	ke'ä'na
2S.	ke'ati	ketongati	ke'änga
3S.	ke'oti	ketongoti	ke'ä'na
1DL.	ke'iti	ketongiti	ke'ä'no
2,3DL.	ke'hiti	ketonghiti	ke'ängiya
1PL.	ke'oäti	ketongoäti	ke'ä'no
2,3PL.	ke'huti	ketonghuti	ke'änguwa

#### A.2.7. Future Imperative

2S.	ke'atna or ke'ana
2,3DL.	ke'hina
2,3PL.	ke'huna

#### A.3. PRIMARY FORMS: -i VERB STEM - 'to do'; NON-ti TENSES

	<i>Immed. Future</i>	<i>Present</i> <i>Contin.</i>	<i>No.1 Past</i>	<i>Present</i> <i>Stative</i>
1S.	imna (ymna)	qi'ya	qimanga	qiyanga
2S.	itna	qi'in	qimangn	qiyangn
3S.	yana	qi'i	qima	qiya
1DL.	ino	qi'yo	qimango	qiyango
2,3DL.	hina	qi'i	qimangi	qiyangi
1PL.	yäno	qi'yo	qimango	qiyango
2,3PL.	hiuna (suna)	qi'ya	qimanga	qiyanga

	<i>Present Stative Obvitative</i>	<i>Present Cont. Stative</i>	<i>Present Cont.Stat. Obvitative</i>
1S.	qiyanqa	qiyat*onga	qiyat*onqa
2S.	qiyanga	qiyatongn	qiyatonga
3S.	qiyanqa	qiyato	qiyatonqa
1DL.	qiyanqo	qiyatongo	qiyatonqo
2,3DL.	qiyangiya	qiyatongi	qiyatongiya
1PL.	qiyanqo	qiyatongo	qiyatonqo
2,3PL.	qiyanguwa	qiyatonga	qiyatonguwa

## A.3.1. PRIMARY - ti TENSES

	<i>Future</i>	<i>Immed. Past</i>	<i>Immed. Past Perf. Stative</i>
1S.	imqa, ymqa ti	niyatmnga ti	niyanqa ti
2S.	it*a ti	niyatnga ti	niyanga ti
3S.	yata ti	niyata ti	niyanqa ti
1DL.	ito ti	niyatä'ä ti	niyanqo ti
2,3DL.	hita ti	nisainga ti	niyangiya ti
1PL.	yäto ti	niyatä'ä ti	niyanqo ti
2,3PL.	hiuta, suta ti	nisaunga ti	niyanguwa ti
	<i>Immed. Past Perf. Cont. Stative</i>	<i>No.2 Past</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>
1S.	niyat*onqa ti	qi'ya ti	qiyanqa ti
2S.	niyatonga ti	qiknga ti	qiyanga ti
3S.	niyatonqa ti	qi'ya ti	qiyanqa ti
1DL.	niyatonqo ti	qi'yo ti	qiyanqo ti
2,3DL.	niyatongi ya ti	qi'iya ti	qiyangi ya ti
1PL.	niyatonqo ti	qi'yo ti	qiyanqo ti
2,3PL.	niyatonguwa ti	qi'iwa ti	qiyanguwa ti
	<i>Habitulative</i>	<i>Past Comp. Habitulative</i>	<i>Past Comp. Hab. Stative</i>
1S.	qimanqa ti	qiyä'na ti	qiyatä'na ti
2S.	qimanga ti	qi'yänga ti	qiyatängä ti
3S.	qimanqa ti	qi'yä'na ti	qiyatä'na ti
1DL.	qimanqo ti	qiyä'no ti	qiyatä'no ti
2,3DL.	qimangi ya ti	qiyängiya ti	qiyatangi ya ti
1PL.	qimanqo ti	qiyä'no ti	qiyatä'no ti
2,3PL.	qimanguwa ti	qi'yänguwa ti	qiyatänguwa ti

## A.3.2. SUBJUNCTIVE - NON-ti TENSES

	<i>Present</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Pres.Stative</i>	<i>Pres.Cont.Stat.</i>
1S.	ymnhe	imangmnhe	yangmnhe	yat*ongmnhe
2S.	ya'anhe	imanganhe	yanganhe	yatonganhe
3S.	yo'onhe	imangonhe	yanganhe	yatongonhe
1Dl.	i'inhe	imanginhe	yanginhe	yatonginhe
2,3Dl.	i'inhe	imanghinhe	yanghinhe	yatonhinhe
1Pl.	yo'änhe	imangoänhe	yangoänhe	yatongoänhe
2,3Pl.	yu'unhe	imanghunhe	yanghunhe	yatonghunhe

## A.3.3. SUBJUNCTIVE - ti TENSES

	<i>Future</i>		<i>Immediate Past</i>		<i>Past 2</i>	
1S.	ymqa	hengonhe	niyatmnga	hengonhe	qimqa	hengonhe
2S.	it*a	"	niyatnga	"	qit*a	"
3S.	yata	"	niyata	"	qiyata	"
1Dl.	ito	"	niyatä'ä	"	qito	"
2,3Dl.	hita	"	nisainga	"	qhita	"
1Pl.	yäto	"	niyatä'ä	"	qiyäto	"
2,3Pl.	hiuta	"	nisaunga	"	qhiuta	"

	<i>Distant Past</i>		<i>Habitulative</i>		<i>Past Comp.Habit.</i>	
1S.	qiyangmt*a	hengonhe	qimangmt*a	hengonhe	qi'yängmt*a	hengonhe
2S.	qiyangata	"	qimangata	"	qi'yängata	"
3S.	qiyangota	"	qimangota	"	qi'yängota	"
1Dl.	qiyangita	"	qimangita	"	qi'yängita	"
2,3Dl.	qiyanghita	"	qimanghita	"	qi'yänghita	"
1Pl.	qiyangoäta	"	qimangoäta	"	qi'yängoäta	"
2,3Pl.	qiyanghuta	"	qimanghuta	"	qi'yänghuta	"

*Distant Past Completed*

*Habitulative Perfect*

*Stative*

1S.	qiyatängmt*a	hengonhe
2S.	qiyatängata	"
3S.	qiyatängota	"
1Dl.	qiyatängita	"
2,3Dl.	qiyatänghit*a	"
1Pl.	qiyatängoäta	"
2,3Pl.	qiyatänghuta	"

## A.3.4. SECONDARY FORMS - q- SERIES

	<i>Future Perf. or Conditional</i>	<i>Present Act. Dubitative</i>	<i>Pres. Stative Dubitative</i>
1S.	qimqa	qi'imti	qiyangmti
2S.	qit*a	qi'yati	qiyangati
3S.	qiyata	qi'yoti	qiyangoti
1DL.	qito	qi'iti	qiyangiti
2,3DL.	qhita	qi'hiti	qiyanghiti
1Pl.	qiyäto	qi'yoäti	qiyangoäti
2,3Pl.	qhiuta	qi'huti	qiyanghuti
	<i>Dist. Future Perf. Active</i>	<i>Dist. Future Comp. Habitulative Perf.</i>	<i>Future Habit. Perfect</i>
1S.	qiyangmt*a	qi'yängmt*a	qimangmt*a
2S.	qiyangata	qi'yängata	qimangata
3S.	qiyangota	qi'yängota	qimangota
1DL.	qiyangita	qi'yängita	qimangita
2,3DL.	qiyanghita	qi'yänghita	qimanghita
1Pl.	qiyangoäta	qi'yängoäta	qimangoäta
2,3Pl.	qiyanghuta	qi'yänghuta	qimanghuta

## A.3.5. TERTIARY FORMS - CONTINUOUS ACTION HAVING TERMINATED

	<i>Future Act.</i>	<i>Future Stat.</i>	<i>Past Active</i>	<i>Past Stative</i>
1S.	ni'imti'yä	niyangmti'yä	ni'ya'nä	niyanga'nä
2S.	ni'yati'yä	niyangati'yä	ni'i'nä	niyangn'ä
3S.	ni'yoti'yä	niyangoti'yä	ni'i'yä	niyangi'yä
1DL.	ni'iti'yä	niyangiti'yä	ni'yo'nä	niyango'nä
2,3DL.	ni'hiti'yä	niyanghiti'yä	ni'i'yä	niyangi'yä
1Pl.	ni'yoäti'yä	niyangoäti'yä	ni'yo'nä	niyango'nä
2,3Pl.	ni'huti'yä	niyanghuti'yä	ni'ya'vä	niyanga'vä

## A.3.6. TERTIARY FORMS - SAME ACTOR PARTICIPIAL FORMS

<i>Successive Action</i>				<i>Processive Action</i>			
1S.	nim	2,3DL.	nhi	1S.	niyatm	2,3DL.	nisai
2S.	nin	1Pl.	niyä	2S.	niyatn	1Pl.	niyatä
3S.	niya	2,3Pl.	nhiu	3S.	niyata	2,3Pl.	nisau
1DL.	niyä			1DL.	niyatä		

## A.3.7. TERTIARY FORMS - DIFFERENT ACTOR PARTICIPIAL FORMS

	<i>Future Act.</i> 'being done'	<i>Future Stat.</i> 'being done'	<i>Fut.Cont.Stat.</i> 'being in state of doing'	<i>Future Active</i> 'when done'
1S.	yä'ängmt*a	yatängmt*a	yat*oängmt*a	yä'ängmntä
2S.	yä'ängata	yatängata	yatoängata	yä'ängatnä
3S.	yä'ängota	yatängota	yatoängota	yä'ängotnä
1Dl.	yä'ängita	yatängita	yatoängita	yä'ängitnä
2,3Dl.	yä'änghita	yatänghita	yatoänghita	yä'änghitnä
1Pl.	yä'ängoäta	yatängoäta	yatoängoäta	yä'ängoätinä
2,3Pl.	yä'änghuta	yatänghuta	yatoänghuta	yä'änghutnä

	<i>Future Stative</i> 'when done'	<i>Fut.Cont.Stative</i> 'when being done'	<i>Fut.Act.Cond.</i> 'while doing'
1S.	yatängmntä	yat*oängmntä	yä'ängmti
2S.	yatängatnä	yatoängatnä	yä'ängati
3S.	yatängotnä	yatoängotnä	yä'ängoti
1Dl.	yatängitnä	yatoängitnä	yä'ängito
2,3Dl.	yatänghitnä	yatoänghitnä	yä'änghiti
1Pl.	yatängoätinä	yatoängoätinä	yä'ängoäti
2,3Pl.	yatänghutnä	yatoänghutnä	yä'änghuti

	<i>Past Active</i>	<i>Past Stative</i>	<i>Past Cont.Stative</i>
1S.	yä'ä'na (yä'äna)	yatä'na	yat*oä'na
2S.	yä'änga (yä'äni)	yatänga	yatoänga
3S.	yä'ä'na (yä'äni)	yatä'na	yatoä'na
1Dl.	yä'ä'no (yä'äno)	yatä'no	yatoä'no
2,3Dl.	yä'ängiya (yä'äni)	yatängiya	yatoängiya
1Pl.	yä'ä'no (yä'äno)	yatä'no	yatoä'no
2,3Pl.	yä'änguwa (yä'äna)	yatänguwa	yatoänguwa

## A.3.8. OTHERS

	<i>Fut.Imp.</i>	<i>Prohib.Mood</i>	<i>Two Other Future Forms</i> (meaning unknown)			
1S.	ym'mna	imni'i	ymenka	ti	ymne'a	ti
2S.	ya'atna	itni'i	itnenka	ti	itne'a	ti
3S.	yo'ona	yani'i	yanenka	ti	yane'a	ti
1Dl.	i'ino	inoi'i	inoenka	ti	inoe'a	ti
2,3Dl.	i'hina	hini'i	hinenka	ti	hine'a	ti
1Pl.	yo'äna	yäni'i	yänoenka	ti	yänoe'a	ti
2,3Pl.	yu'huna	hiuni'i	hiunenka	ti	hiune'a	ti

A.4. OTHER CONJUGATIONS SHOWING STEM CHANGES (Compiled by Corinne Palmer)

A.4.1. -t- 'speak' pane'a hati Imperative: hati (S. and Pl.)

	<i>Imm.Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>
1S.	tmna	tmqa ti	qatmanga	qätmanqa ti	qati'ya
2S.	titna	tit*a ti	qatmangn	qätmanga ti	qati'in
3S.	tana	tata ti	qatma	qätmanqa ti	qat*i
1Dl.	tino	tito ti	qatmango	qätmanqo ti	qati'yo
2,3Dl.	thina	thita ti	qatmangi	qätmangiya ti	qat*i
1Pl.	täno	täto ti	qatmango	qätmanqo ti	qati'yo
2,3Pl.	thuna	thuta ti	qatmanga	qätmanguwa ti	qati'ya

	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Immed. Past</i>
1S.	qät*a ti	qätanqa ti	natatmnga ti
2S.	qätiknga ti	qätanga ti	natatnga ti
3S.	qät*a ti	qätanqa ti	natat*a ti
1Dl.	qäto ti	qätanqo ti	natatä'ä ti
2,3Dl.	qätiya ti	qätangiya ti	nathainga ti
1Pl.	qäto ti	qätanqo ti	natatä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	qätuwa ti	qätanguwa ti	nathaunga ti

NEGATIVE: mäta Fut. Imp. 2S. ta'atna 2Dl. ti'hina 2Pl. tu'huna

A.4.2. -tit\*i- 'cover sweet potatoes' hope'a hawa Imp. hatit\*i

	<i>Immed.Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>
1S.	tit*imna	tit*imqa ti	qatit*imanga	qätit*imanqa ti
2S.	tititna	titit*a ti	qatitimangn	qätitimanga ti
3S.	titiyana	titiyata ti	qatitima	qätitimanga ti
1Dl.	titino	titito ti	qatitimango	qätitimango ti
2,3Dl.	tithina	tithita ti	qatitimangi	qätitimangiya ti
1Pl.	titiyäno	titiyäto ti	qatitimango	qätitimano ti
2,3Pl.	tithiuna	tithiuta ti	qatitimanga	qätitimanguwa ti

	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Immed.Past</i>
1S.	qatit*i'ya	qätit*i'ya ti	qätit*iyanga ti	natit*iyatmnga ti
2S.	qatiti'in	qätitiknga ti	qätitiyanga ti	natitiyatnga ti
3S.	qatiti'i	qätiti'ya ti	qätitiyanqa ti	natitiyat*a ti
1Dl.	qatiti'yo	qätiti'yo ti	qätitiyanqo ti	natitiyatä'ä ti

	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Immed.Past</i>
2,3DL.	qatiti'i	qätiti'iya ti	qätitiyangiya ti	natitisainga ti
1Pl.	qatiti'yo	qätiti'yo ti	qätitiyango ti	natitiyatä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	qatiti'ya	qätiti'iwa ti	qätitiyanguwa ti	natitisaunga ti

## NEGATIVE: mätit\*ya

*Future Imp.*

2S. tit\*i'yatna

2DL. titi'hina

2Pl. titi'huna

## A.4.3. -yamak-, iyamak- 'make' Imperative: hiyamaki

	<i>Immed.Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>
1S.	yamakna	yamakma ti	qiyamakmanga	qiyamakmanqa ti
2S.	yamaktna	yamakt*a ti	qiyamakmangn	qiyamakmanga ti
3S.	yamakana	yamakata ti	qiyamakma	qiyamakmanqa ti
1DL.	yamakino	yamakito ti	qiyamakmango	qiyamakmanqo ti
2,3DL.	yamakhina	yamakhita ti	qiyamakmangi	qiyamakmangiya ti
1Pl.	yamakäno	yamakäto ti	qiyamakmango	qiyamakmanqo ti
2,3Pl.	yamakhuna	yamakhuta ti	qiyamakmanga	qiyamakmanguwa ti

	<i>Present Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>
1S.	qiyamaki'ya	qiyamak*a ti	qiyamakanqa ti
2S.	qiyamak*n	qiyamakiknga ti	qiyamakanga ti
3S.	qiyamak*i	qiyamak*a ti	qiyamakanqa ti
1DL.	qiyamaki'yo	qiyamak*o ti	qiyamakanqo ti
2,3DL.	qiyamak*i	qiyamak*iya ti	qiyamakangiya ti
1Pl.	qiyamaki'yo	qiyamak*o ti	qiyamakanqo ti
2,3Pl.	qiyamaki'ya	qiyamakuwa ti	qiyamakanguwa ti

*Immediate Past*

1S.	niyamakatmnga ti
2S.	niyamakatnga ti
3S.	niyamakat*a ti
1DL.	niyamakatä'ä ti
2,3DL.	niyamakhainga ti
1Pl.	niyamakatä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	niyamakhaunga ti

## NEGATIVE: miyamak\*a

*Future Imp.*

2S. yamak\*atna

2DL. yamaki'hina

2Pl. yamaku'huna

## A.4.4. -u- 'go' Imperative: hu (S.); huwi (Pl.)

	Immed. Future		Future	Past No.1	Habitulative	
1S.	umna	or numna	umqa ti	qumanga	qumanqa	ti
2S.	utna	" nutna	ut*a ti	qumangn	qumanga	ti
3S.	wana	" nuwana	wata ti	quma	qumanqa	ti
1DL.	wino	" nuwino	wito ti	qumango	qumanqo	ti
2,3DL.	whina	" nuwhina	whita ti	qumangi	qumangiya	ti
1PL.	wāno	" nuwāno	wāto ti	qumango	qumanqo	ti
2,3PL.	huna	" nhuna	huta ti	qumanga	qumanguwa	ti

	Pres.Cont.	Past No.2	Distant Past	Immed. Past	
1S.	qu'wa	qu'wa ti	quwanqa ti	nuwatmnga	ti
2S.	qu'un	quknga ti	quwanga ti	nuwatnga	ti
3S.	qu'wi	qu'wa ti	quwanqa ti	nuwat*a	ti
1DL.	qu'wo	qu'wo ti	quwanqo ti	nuwatä'ä	ti
2,3DL.	qu'wi	qu'wiya ti	quwangiya ti	nuwhainga	ti
1PL.	qu'wo	qu'wo ti	quwanqo ti	nuwatä'ä	ti
2,3PL.	qu'wa	qu'uwa ti	quwanguwa ti	nuwhaunga	ti

NEGATIVE: mu'wa

Future Imp.

2S. wa'atna

2DL. wi'hina

2PL. u'huna

## A.4.5. päu 'come by going level' Imp. päu (S.); päwi (Pl.)

	Imm.Fut.	Future	Past No.1	Habitulative	Pres.Cont.
1S.	pumna	pmqa ti	qapmanga	qapmanqa ti	qapu'wa
2S.	putna	put*a ti	qapmangn	qapmanga ti	qapu'un
3S.	puwana	puwata ti	qapuma	qapumanqa ti	qapu'wi
1DL.	puwino	puwito ti	qapmango	qapmanqo ti	qapu'wo
2,3DL.	puwhina	puwhita ti	qapmangi	qapmangiya ti	qapu'wi
1PL.	puwāno	puwāto ti	qapmango	qapmanqo ti	qapu'wo
2,3PL.	phuna	phuta ti	qapmanga	qapmanguwa ti	qapu'wa

	Past No.2	Distant Past	Immediate Past
1S.	qapu'wa ti	qapuwanga ti	napuwatmnga ti
2S.	qapuknga ti	qapuwanga ti	napuwatnga ti

	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Immediate Past</i>
3S.	qapu'wa ti	qapuanqa ti	napuwat*a ti
1DL.	qapu'wo ti	qapuanqo ti	napuwatä'ä ti
2,3DL.	qapu'wiya ti	qapuwangiya ti	napuwhainga ti
1Pl.	qapu'wo ti	qapuanqo ti	napuwatä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	qapu'uwa ti	qapuwanguwa ti	napuwhaunga ti

NEGATIVE: mapu'wa

*Future Imp.*

2S. pu'watna

2DL. pu'wihina

2Pl. pu'huna

A.4.6. päwo or päwa 'come by going down' Imp. päwo (S.); päwoi, päwai (Pl.)

	<i>Immed.Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>
1S.	pomna	pomqa ti	qapomanga	qäpomanqa ti	qapoe'a
2S.	potna	pot*a ti	qapomangn	qäpomanqa ti	qapoe'en
3S.	poena	poeta ti	qapoma	qäpomanqa ti	qapoe'i
1DL.	poino	poito ti	qapomango	qäpomanqo ti	qapoe'o
2,3DL.	phoina	phoita ti	qapomangi	qäpomangiya ti	qapoe'i
1Pl.	poeäno	poeäto ti	qapomango	qäpomanqo ti	qapoe'o
2,3Pl.	phouna	phouta ti	qapomanga	qäpomanguwa ti	wapoe'a

	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Immed. Past</i>
1S.	qapoe'a ti	qapoenqa ti	napoetmnga ti
2S.	qapoe'knga ti	qapoenga ti	napoetnga ti
3S.	qapoe'a ti	qapoenqa ti	napoet*a ti
1DL.	qapoe'o ti	qapoengqo ti	napoetä'ä ti
2,3DL.	qapoe'iya ti	qapoengiya ti	naphoeinga ti
1Pl.	qapoe'o ti	qapoengqo ti	napoetä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	qapoe'uwa ti	qapoenguwa ti	naphoeunga ti

NEGATIVE: mapoe'a

*Future Imp.*

2S. poe'atna

2DL. poe'hina

2Pl. poe'huna

## A.4.7. -nkunäi- 'swallow' Imperative: hankunäi (S. and Pl.)

	<i>Immed. Future</i>	<i>Future</i>		<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>	
1S.	nkunäimna	nkunäimqa	ti	qankunäimanga	qankunäimanqa	ti
2S.	nkunäitna	nkunäit*a	ti	qankunäimangn	qankunäimanga	ti
3S.	nkuneäna	nkuneäta	ti	qankunäima	qankunäimanqa	ti
1Dl.	nkunäino	nkunäito	ti	qankunäimango	qankunäimanqo	ti
2,3Dl.	nkunhäina	nkunhäita	ti	qankunäimangi	qankunäimangiya	ti
1Pl.	nkuneäno	nkuneäto	ti	qankunäimango	qankunäimanqo	ti
2,3Pl.	nkunhäiuna	nkunhäiuta	ti	qankunäimanga	qankunäimanguwa	ti

	<i>Present Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>		<i>Distant Past</i>	
1S.	qankune'ä	qankune'ä	ti	qankuneänqa	ti
2S.	qankune'än	qankueäknga	ti	qankuneänga	ti
3S.	qankune'äi	qankune'ä	ti	qankuneänqa	ti
1Dl.	qankune'äo	qankune'äo	ti	qankuneänqo	ti
2,3Dl.	qankune'äi	qankuneä'iyä	ti	qankuneängiya	ti
1Pl.	qankune'äo	qankune'äo	ti	qankuneänqo	ti
2,3Pl.	qankune'ä	qankuneä'uwa	ti	qankuneänguwa	ti

*Immediate Past*

1S.	nankuneätmnga	ti		
2S.	nankuneätnga	ti		
3S.	nankuneät*a	ti		
1Dl.	nankuneätä'ä	ti		
2,3Dl.	nankunheäinga	ti		
1Pl.	nankuneätä'ä	ti		
2,3Pl.	nankunheäunga	ti		

## NEGATIVE: mankune'ä

*Future Imp.*

2S.	nkune'ätna
2Dl.	nkune'ähina
2Pl.	nkune'ähuna

## A.4.8. -huyäu- 'get up' Imperative: huyäu (S.); huyävi (Pl.)

	<i>Immed. Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>		<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>	
1S.	nauyämna	nauyämqa	ti	qauyämanga	qauyämanqa	ti
2S.	nauyäutna	nauyäut*a	ti	qauyämangn	qauyämanga	ti
3S.	nauyävana	nauyävata	ti	qauyäma	qauyämanqa	ti
1Dl.	nauyävino	nauyävito	ti	qauyämango	qauyämanqo	ti
2,3Dl.	nauyäfina	nauyäfita	ti	qauyämangi	qauyämangiya	ti
1Pl.	nauyäväno	nauyäväto	ti	qauyämango	qauyämanqo	ti
2,3Pl.	nausäuna	nausäuta	ti	qauyämanga	qauyämanguwa	ti

	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>		<i>Distant Past</i>		<i>Immediate Past</i>
1S.	qauyä'va	qauyä'va	ti	qauyävanqa	ti	nauyävatmnga ti
2S.	qauyä'un	qauyäuknka	ti	qauyävanga	ti	nauyävatnga ti
3S.	qauyä'vi	qauyä'va	ti	qauyävanqa	ti	nauyävat*a ti
1DL.	qauyä'vo	qauyä'vo	ti	qauyävanqo	ti	nauyävatä'ä ti
2,3DL.	qauyä'vi	qaiyä'viya	ti	qauyävangiya	ti	nauyäfainga ti
1PL.	qauyä'vo	qauyä'vo	ti	qauyävanqo	ti	nauyävatä'ä ti
2,3PL.	qauyä'va	qauyä'uwa	ti	qauyävanguwa	ti	nausäunga ti

NEGATIVE: mauyä'va

*Future Imp.*

2S. huyäv'atna

2DL. huyä'hina

2PL. husä'una

(The na- can be omitted in the *Imm.Fut.* and *Fut.* tenses; the /h/ of the stem would in that case not be lost: huyämna, huyäutna, etc. There are many alternate pronunciations of the forms of this verb.)

A.4.9. tau- 'cut down trees' *Imperative*: hatau (S.); hatai (PL.)

	<i>Imm.Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>		<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>		<i>Pres.Cont.</i>
1S.	tamna	tamqa	ti	qatamanga	qätamanqa	ti	qato'a
2S.	tautna	taut*a	ti	qatamangn	qätamanga	ti	qata'un
3S.	tona	tota	ti	qatama	qätamanqa	ti	qato'i
1DL.	taino	taito	ti	qatamango	qätamanqo	ti	qato'o
2,3DL.	thaina	thaita	ti	qatamangi	qätamangiya	ti	qato'i
1PL.	toäno	toäto	ti	qatamango	qätamanqo	ti	qato'o
2,3PL.	thauna	thauta	ti	qatamanga	qätamanguwa	ti	qato'a

*Past No.2*

*Dist.Past*

*Immed.Past*

1S.	qäto'a	ti	qätonqa	ti	natotmnga	ti
2S.	qätoknga	ti	qätonga	ti	natotnga	ti
3S.	qäto'a	ti	qätonqa	ti	natot*a	ti
1DL.	qäto'o	ti	qätonqo	ti	natotä'ä	ti
2,3DL.	qäto'iya	ti	qätongiya	ti	nathoinga	ti
1PL.	qäto'o	ti	qätonqo	ti	natotä'ä	ti
2,3PL.	qäto'uwa	ti	qätonguwa	ti	nathounga	ti

NEGATIVE: mäto'a

*Future Imp.*

2S. to'atna

2DL. to'hina

2PL. to'huna

## A.4.10. mā- 'get' Imperative: hamä (S.); hamäi (Pl.)

	<i>Immed. Future</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>
1S.	mämna	mämqa ti	qamämanga	qamämanqa ti	qame'ä
2S.	mätna	mät*a ti	qamämangn	qamämanga ti	qame'än
3S.	meäna	meäta ti	qamäma	qamämanqa ti	qame'äi
1DL.	mäino	mäito ti	qamämango	qamämanqo ti	qame'äo
2,3DL.	mhäina	mhäita ti	qamämangi	qamämangiya ti	qame'äi
1PL.	meäno	meäto ti	qamämango	qamämanqo ti	qame'äo
2,3PL.	mhäuna	mhäuta ti	qamämanga	qamämanguwa ti	qame'ä

	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Immed. Past</i>
1S.	qame'ä ti	qameänqa ti	nameätmnga ti
2S.	qameäknga ti	qameänga ti	nameätnga ti
3S.	qame'ä ti	qameänqa ti	nameät*a ti
1DL.	qame'äo ti	qameänqo ti	nameät'ä ti
2,3DL.	qameä'iya ti	qameängiya ti	namhëainga ti
1PL.	qame'äo ti	qameänqo ti	nameät'ä ti
2,3PL.	qameä'uwa ti	qameänguwa ti	namheäunga ti

*Present Stative*

1S.	qämeänga	<i>NEGATIVE: mäme'ä</i>
2S.	qameängn	<i>Future Imp.</i>
3S.	qameä	2S. me'ätna
1DL.	qameängo	2DL. me'ähina
2,3DL.	qameängi	2PL. me'ähuna
1PL.	qameängo	
2,3PL.	qameänga	

## A.4.11. khai- 'dish up' Imperative: hakhai (S. and Pl.)

	<i>Immed.Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>
1S.	khaimna	khaimqa ti	qakhaimanga	qäkhaimanqa ti
2S.	khaitna	khait*a ti	qakhaimangn	qäkhaimanga ti
3S.	khena	kheta ti	qakhaima	qäkhaimanqa ti
1DL.	khaino	khaito ti	qakhaimango	qäkhaimanqo ti
2,3DL.	khaina	khaita ti	qakhaimangi	qäkhaimangiya ti
1PL.	kheäno	kheäto ti	qakhaimango	qäkhaimanqo ti
2,3PL.	khaiuna	khaiutä ti	qakhaimanga	qäkhaimanguwa ti

	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>		<i>Distant Past</i>		<i>Immediate Past</i>
1S.	qakhe'a	qäkke'a	ti	qäkkenqa	ti	nakhetmnga ti
2S.	qakhe'en	qäkkeknga	ti	qäkhenga	ti	nakhetnga ti
3S.	qakhe'i	qäkke'a	ti	qäkkenqa	ti	nakhet*a ti
1DL.	qakhe'o	qäkke'o	ti	qäkhengo	ti	nakhetä'ä ti
2,3DL.	qakhe'i	qäkke'iya	ti	qäkhengiya	ti	nakheinga ti
1PL.	qakhe'o	qäkke'o	ti	qäkhengo	ti	nakhetä'ä ti
2,3PL.	qakhe'a	qäkke'uwa	ti	qäkhenguwa	ti	nakheunga ti

NEGATIVE: mäkhe'a

*Future Imp.*

2S. khe'atna

2DL. khe'hina

2PL. khe'huna

A.4.12. hai- 'put; exist' Imperative: hai (S. and Pl.)

	<i>Immed.</i>	<i>Future</i>		<i>Past No.1</i>		<i>Habitulative</i>		<i>Pres.Cont.</i>
								<i>Future</i>
1S.	haimna	haimqa	ti	qhaimanga	qhäimanqa	ti	qhe'a	
2S.	haitna	hait*a	ti	qhaimangn	qhäimanga	ti	qhe'en	
3S.	hena	heta	ti	qhaima	qhäimanqa	ti	qhe'i	
1DL.	haino	haito	ti	qhaimango	qhäimanqo	ti	qhe'o	
2,3DL.	haina	haita	ti	qhaimangi	qhäimangiya	ti	qhe'i	
1PL.	heäno	heäto	ti	qhäimango	qhäimanqo	ti	qhe'o	
2,3PL.	haiuna	haiuta	ti	qhaimanga	qhäimanguwa	ti	qhe'a	

	<i>Past No.2</i>		<i>Dist.Past</i>		<i>Immed.Past</i>		<i>Present Stative</i>
1S.	qhe'ä	ti	qheänqa	ti	nhetmnga	ti	qhenga
2S.	qheäknga	ti	qheänga	ti	nhetnga	ti	qhengn
3S.	qhe'ä	ti	qheänqa	ti	nhet*a	ti	qhe
1DL.	qheä'o	ti	qheänqo	ti	nhetä'ä	ti	qhengo
2,3DL.	qheä'iya	ti	qheängiya	ti	nheinga	ti	qhengi
1PL.	qheä'o	ti	qheänqo	ti	nhetä'ä	ti	qhengo
2,3PL.	qheä'uwa	ti	qheänguwa	ti	nheunga	ti	qhenga

NEGATIVE: mhe'ä

*Future Imp.*

2S. he'atna

2DL. he'hina

2PL. he'huna

## A.4.13. -o- 'go down' Imperative: ho (S.); hoi (Pl.)

	Immediate Future	Future	Past No.1	Habitulative
1S.	wamna nomna	wamqa ti	qomanga	qomanqa ti
2S.	watna notna	wat*a ti	qomangn	qomanga ti
3S.	wena noena	weta ti	qoma	qomanqa ti
1Dl.	waino noino	waito ti	qomango	qomanqo ti
2,3Dl.	whaina nhoina	whaita ti	qomangi	qomangiya ti
1Pl.	weäno noeäno	weäto ti	qomango	qomanqo ti
2,3Pl.	whauna nhouna	whauta ti	qomanga	qomanguwa ti

	Pres.Cont.	Past No.2	Distant Past	Immed.Past
1S.	qoe'a	qoe'a ti	qoenqa ti	noetmnga ti
2S.	qoe'en	qoeknga ti	qoenga ti	noetnga ti
3S.	qoe'i	qoe'a ti	qoenqa ti	noet*a ti
1Dl.	qoe'o	qoe'o ti	qoenqo ti	noetä'ä ti
2,3Dl.	qoe'i	qoe'iya ti	qoengiya ti	nhoeinga ti
1Pl.	qoe'o	qoe'o ti	qoenqo ti	noetä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	qoe'a	qoe'uwa ti	qoenguwa ti	nhoeunga ti

*Present Stative*

1S.	qoenga	
2S.	qoengn	NEGATIVE: moe'a
3S.	qoe	Future Imp.
1Dl.	qoengo	2S. we'atna
2,3Dl.	qoengi	2Dl. we'hina
1Pl.	qoengo	2Pl. we'huna
2,3Pl.	qoenga	

## A.4.14. -'anhoi- 'to finish' Imperative: ha'anhoi (S. and Pl.)

	Immed.Fut.	Future	Past No.1	Habitulative
1S.	qanhoimna	qanhoimqa ti	qa'anhoimanga	qä'änhoimanqa ti
2S.	qanhoitna	qanhoit*a ti	qa'anhoimangn	qä'änhoimanga ti
3S.	qanhoena	qanhoeta ti	qa'anhoima	qä'änhoimanqa ti
1Dl.	qanhoino	qanhoito ti	qa'anhoimango	qä'änhoimanqo ti
2,3Dl.	qanhoina	qanhoita ti	qa'anhoimangi	qä'änhoimangiya ti
1Pl.	qanhoeäno	qanhoeäto ti	qa'anhoimango	qä'änhoimanqo ti
2,3Pl.	qanhoiuna	qanhoiuta ti	qa'anhoimanga	qä'änhoimanguwa ti

	<i>Present Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>
1S.	qa'anhoe'a	qä'änhoe'a ti	qä'änhoenqa ti
2S.	qa'anhoe'en	qä'änhoe'knga ti	qä'änhoenqa ti
3S.	qa'anhoe'i	qä'änhoe'a ti	qä'änhoenqa ti
1Dl.	qa'anhoe'o	qä'änhoe'o ti	qä'änhoenqa ti
2,3Dl.	qa'anhoe'i	qä'änhoe'iya ti	qä'änhoengiya ti
1Pl.	qa'anhoe'o	qä'änhoe'o ti	qä'änhoenqa ti
2,3Pl.	qa'anhoe'a	qä'änhoe'uwa ti	qä'änhoenguwa ti

*Immediate Past*

1S.	na'anhoetmnga ti	NEGATIVE: mä'änhoe'a
2S.	na'anhoetnga ti	
3S.	na'anhoet*a ti	<i>Future Imp.</i>
1Dl.	na'anhoetä'ä ti	2S. qanhoe'atna
2,3Dl.	na'anhoeinga ti	2Dl. qanhoe'hina
1Pl.	na'anhoetä'ä ti	2Pl. qanhoe'huna
2,3Pl.	na'anhoeunga ti	

## A.4.15. -'you- 'take off shoes; peel bark off a tree'

Imperative: ha'you (S.); ha'yovi (Pl.)

	<i>Immediate Future</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habitulative</i>
1S.	'yomna na'yomna	'yomqa ti	qa'yomanga	qä'yomanqa ti
2S.	'youtna na'youtna	'yout*a ti	qa'yomangn	qä'yomanga ti
3S.	'yovana na'yovana	'yovata ti	qa'yoma	qä'yomanqa ti
1Dl.	'yovino na'yovino	'yovito ti	qa'yomango	qä'yomanqa ti
2,3Dl.	'yofina na'yofina	'yofita ti	qa'yomangi	qä'yomangiya ti
1Pl.	'yoväno na'yoväno	'yoväto ti	qa'yomango	qä'yomanqa ti
2,3Pl.	'yohuna na'yohuna	'yohuta ti	qa'yomanga	qä'yomanguwa ti

(The /'/' word initially is there with some speakers when the word is spoken in isolation but is always there when another word precedes - by far the most common occurrence of these verbs.)

	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>	<i>Distant Past</i>	<i>Immediate Past</i>
1S.	qa'yo'va	qä'yo'va ti	qä'yovanqa ti	na'yovatmnga ti
2S.	qa'yo'un	qä'yoknga ti	qä'yovanga ti	na'yovatnga ti
3S.	qa'yo'vi	qä'yo'va ti	qä'yovanqa ti	na'yovat*a ti
1Dl.	qa'yo'vo	qä'yo'vo ti	qä'yovanqa ti	na'yovatä'ä ti
2,3Dl.	qa'yo'vi	qä'yo'viya ti	qä'yovangiya ti	na'yofainga ti

	<i>Pres.Cont.</i>	<i>Past No.2</i>		<i>Distant Past</i>		<i>Immediate Past</i>
1Pl.	qa'yo'vo	qä'yo'vo	ti	qä'yovanqo	ti	na'yovatä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	qa'yo'va	qä'yo'uwa	ti	qä'yovanguwa	ti	na'yofaunga ti

NEGATIVE: mä'yov'a

*Future Imp.*

2S. 'yov'atna

2Dl. 'yov'ahina

2Pl. 'yo'huna

A.4.16. pävi 'come by going up' Imperative: pävi (S. and Pl.)

	<i>Imm.Fut.</i>	<i>Future</i>		<i>Past No.1</i>	<i>Habituaive</i>		<i>Pres.Cont.</i>
1S.	pimna	pimqa	ti	qapimanga	qapimanqa	ti	qapi'ya
2S.	pitna	pit*a	ti	qapimangn	qapimanga	ti	qapi'in
3S.	piyana	piyata	ti	qapima	qapimanqa	ti	qapi'i
1Dl.	pino	pito	ti	qapimango	qapimanqo	ti	qapi'yo
2,3Dl.	phina	phita	ti	qapimangi	qapimangiya	ti	qapi'i
1Pl.	piyäno	piyäto	ti	qapimango	qapimanqo	ti	qapi'yo
2,3Pl.	phiuna	phiuta	ti	qapimanga	qapimanguwa	ti	qapi'ya

	<i>Past No.2</i>		<i>Distant Past</i>		<i>Immediate Past</i>
1S.	qapi'ya	ti	qapiyanqa	ti	napiyatmnga ti
2S.	qapiknga	ti	qapiyanga	ti	napiyatnga ti
3S.	qapi'ya	ti	qapiyanqa	ti	napiyat*a ti
1Dl.	qapi'yo	ti	qapiyanqo	ti	napiyatä'ä ti
2,3Dl.	qapi'iya	ti	qapiyangiya	ti	napisainga ti
1Pl.	qapi'yo	ti	qapiyanqo	ti	napiyatä'ä ti
2,3Pl.	qapi'iwa	ti	qapiyanguwa	ti	napisaunga ti

NEGATIVE: mapi'ya

*Future Imp.*

2S. pi'yatna

2Dl. pi'hina

2Pl. pi'huna

APPENDIX B

LIST OF NOUNS (ADJECTIVES) AND VERB STEMS WHICH OCCUR IN N-Vx

B.1. NOUN PLUS -i- 'do' STEM

wamnga	(garden)	-i-		work
qatä'ä	(weeds)	-i-		weed a garden
ämnga	(breast, milk)	-i-		nurse (feed) a baby
qä	(bag)	-i-		make a bag
hinga	(hiccough)	-i-		have hiccoughs
mpa	(pay)	-i-		buy, sell
sukuta	(school)	-i-		do schooling
uyawa	(plant)	-i-		plant
qata	(ear)	-i-		hear, listen to, believe
maka	(fight)	-i-		fight
qofe'a	(shoe)	-i-		put on shoes, socks
hätnga	(bundle)	-i-		bundle up
hepa	(tobacco)	-i-		smoke cigarettes, tobacco
quymnga	(pus)	-i-	3S.	ooze pus
tiväka	(smoke)	-i-	3S.	be smoking
itmqa	(clothing worn around shoulders)	-i-		wrap up in cloth, etc. (choke out weeds or plants)
inavä	(lightning)	-i-	3S.	be lightning
memawa	"	-i-	3S.	be lightning
ymnga	(wind)	-i-	3S.	be windy
mta	(hungry)	-i-	3S.	be hungry
ya	(fear)	-i-		be afraid
äp*a	(dance)	-i-		dance as at a sing-sing, to circle as a plane or bird

hingo tiväka	(eye, smoke)	-i-	3S.	get smoke in one's eyes
qoä iwänga	(ground, fine particles)	-i-		loosen or turn over dirt for garden
ta yatewä	(firewood, pile up)	-i-		pile up firewood
iwhäintoka	(swing)	-i-		swing
pp*a	(shaking)	-i-		be frightened, startled
yanga ppa	(leg)	-i-		shiver with fever
to'ä	(image)	-i-		show
qiyäfa	(pleasure)	-i-		pleased
yätanga	(question)	-i-		ask
se'ä	(happiness)	-i-		be happy
mängiyä	(yawn)	-i-		to yawn
hanki'ya	(medicine)	-i-		dress a sore
hata		-i-		straighten something crooked
hiyamtä'ä		-i-		sit over fire
yä'ä		-i-		shiver (as with a fever)
imaima		-i-		sprinkle
qamta	(irreccogni- tion)	-i-		1. do wrongly 2. not to recognise

## B.1.1. ADJECTIVE PLUS -i- 'do' STEM

hämnga	(weak, soft)	-i-		be weak
neäinqa	(light)	-i-		be light in weight
yeä	(dry)	-i-	3S.	be drying (as clothes)
koe'ä	(dry)	-i-	3S.	be drying (as grass)
qhekänga	(smooth)	-i-		be smooth
qui'i	(badly)	-i-		break down (as a machine)
yap*a	(jealous)	-i-		be jealous, rebel, sulk
mqa	(ripe)	-i-	3S.	ripen
mänko		-i-		be full (of liquid)

These expressions may also occur with a noun root:

nkunka yeä	(throat dry)	-i-		be thirsty
yi yanga	(arrow, strong)	-i-		pull back the bowstring and aim

## B.2. NOUN PLUS -ti-, -t-, 'speak, utter' STEM

wip*a	(whistle)	-ti-	whistle
mä'ä	(call)	-ti-	to call
äp*a	(singsing)	-ti-	to sing
qhoä	(talk)	-ti-	to converse
tpe'a	(laughter)	-ti-	to laugh
atät*a	(falsehood)	-ti-	speak falsehood, lie

There are some nouns dealing with natural phenomena or the emotions that also occur with the -ti- stem. (Note that the first one also occurs with -i- 'do' stem.)

ymnga	(wind)	-ti-	3S.	be cold
hinko	(thunder)	-ti-	3S.	thunder
pate'a	(anger)	-ti-		talk angrily, be cross
map*a	(sun)	-ti-		sun to shine
qe'a	(liver)	-ti-		experience feeling of sudden fright
häpp*a	(fatigue)	-ti-		be tired

Also:

phu'wa		-ti-		blow
u'wa		-ti-	3S.	roar
mamai'ya		-ti-	3S.	sting
äto		-ti-		help

## B.3. NOUN + -in- 'think' VERB STEM

quno	(thoughts)	-in-	3S.	remember
wampä	(shame)	-in-		ashamed
yo or qamta		-in-		forget
qaingo	(dislike)	-in-		dislike
e'ä'ma	(water, for)	-in-		thirsty
tpe'a	(laughter)	-in-		amused

## B.4. NOUN + -qi- 'hit' VERB STEM

ipka	(stick)	-qi-		to strike, hit
tuwämnga	(mark, charcoal)	-qi-		to write
kngo	(cry)	-qi-		to cry
piya	(rain)	-qi-		to rain
päsi tuwämnga		-qi-		to write a letter

piya tätvanga		-qi-	to rain heavily
qämnga äivä		-qi-	be full moon
hiwi'yamqa	(hail)	-qi-	to hail
ipta	(morning twilight)	-qi-	sun to rise light from
ipka	(action of hitting)	-qi-	hit (with stick)
qofe'a	(foot)	-qi-	kick
äika	(stone with crisscross marks)	-qi-	beat bark cape
kukisa'a	(knot)	-qi-	tie knot
pt#a	(knock)	-qi-	knock, tap, pat with hands
su'wa pta	(tail, knock)	-qi-	wag tail on ground
kuntu	(drum)	-qi-	beat a drum
qonä'ä	(fence)	-qi-	build a fence
pisänga	(smell)	-qi-	smell
kinänga	(smell)	-qi-	smell
titnänga	(smell)	-qi-	smell
äifä		-qi-	swim
äiwa	(tongue)	-qi-	lick
häpnga	(finger- nails)	-qi-	scratch with fingers
hewa (skin), hava (knife)		-qi-	peel skin (with knife)
huyahuya		-qi-	shake out

## B.5. NOUN + -u- 'go' STEM

imaima		-u-	go backwards
tuwahintä	(back, side)	-u-	go backwards
himahima		-u-	be scattered about
ime'ä namnqa	(baby within)	-u-	carry baby in bag
kinkä		-u-	roll
qänga	(door, walk)	-u-	walk
fafä'uta		-u-	limp
mtnga	(spirit, life)	-u-	die
hikeka		-u-	limp
aqami'ya		-u-	go quietly
quwa	(stealth)	-u-	sneak

qu'upka	-u-	<i>slide accidentally</i>
qiyaqiya	-u-	<i>walk around a house</i>

## B.6. NOUN + OTHER VERB STEMS

ym	-mau-	<i>throw away</i>
mtnga	-mau-	<i>breathe</i>
mäkuka	-qut-	<i>spit</i>
uyawa	-qut-	<i>plant</i>
iyanga	-qut-	<i>give injection, be pierced by thorn, splinter, etc.</i>
iya (tree) mnga	-qut-	<i>be pierced by sharp point of a piece of wood or tree</i>

(NOTE: -qut- appears to mean *go through something*, as *spitting saliva through the mouth*.)

watänwa	(sore)	-it-	<i>heal sore</i>
ta	(fire)	-it-	<i>fire lit</i>
kngo fa	(cry with)	-u- (go)	<i>go crying</i>
änga	(house)	-yamak-	<i>(make) build a house</i>
yi	(arrow)	-yamak-	<i>make an arrow</i>
mnga	(egg)	-yamak-	<i>beat eggs</i>
susu	(milk)	-yamak-	<i>mix milk</i>
ita	(food)	-n- (eat)	<i>eat</i>
ta	(fire)	-n-	<i>burn</i>
mänga	(mouth teeth)	-eäu-	<i>open mouth</i>
qova	(kunai grass)	-eäu-	<i>pull up kunai</i>
iya	(tree)	-tau-	<i>cut down a tree</i>
mänga	(teeth)	-tau-	<i>pull teeth</i>
ä		-tau-	<i>read, recite, count</i>
haqoänga	(teeth)	-tau-	<i>bite</i>
tuwa	(behind)	-tau-	<i>follow (behind on trail)</i>
koikoi		-tau-	<i>rotate, twist</i>
kopakopa		-tau-	<i>wrap (as in bark) something for cooking</i>
ya		-t*au-	<i>stand</i>
tanga		-un-	<i>pain, sick</i>
ha'va		-un-	<i>sorry for</i>
hipi'ya		-hai-	<i>(put, be) night falls</i>
hanga	(play)	-mai, -i-	<i>play with</i>
yänga	(gift)	-mai-	<i>break loose, move, offer</i>

ituka	(braided bands)	-mi-	braid bands
qoä	(ground)	-qan-	fall down
qoä	(ground)	-hai-	bury a person
sä'ä		-o-	sleep

## APPENDIX C

### OTHER NOUNS WHICH OCCUR WITH A VARIETY OF VERB STEMS IN N-Vx

#### C.1. ta 'fire'

ta	-n-	<i>eat (Int.) consume as burned</i>
ta	-t-	<i>give off heat (Trans.)</i>
ta	-ve-	<i>be feverish</i>
ta	-matau-	<i>set fire to</i>
ta	-mangi-	<i>ignite</i>
ta	-it-	<i>be alight</i>
ta	-ikä-	<i>build fire</i>

#### C.2. ita 'food'

ita	-n-	<i>eat</i>
ita	-mi-	<i>get food</i>
ita	-i'yai-	<i>cook</i>

#### C.3. mtnga 'breath, steam'

mtnga	-mau-	<i>breathe</i>
mtnga	-i-	<i>steam</i>
mtnga	-pi-	<i>steam rises</i>
mtnga	-hin-	<i>be warm</i>

#### C.4. yänga 'gift'

yänga	-täp-	<i>give</i>
yänga	-wi-	<i>give him, them</i>
yänga	-mäi-	<i>offer</i>

## APPENDIX D

### HUMAN RELATIONSHIP CHARTS AND TERMS

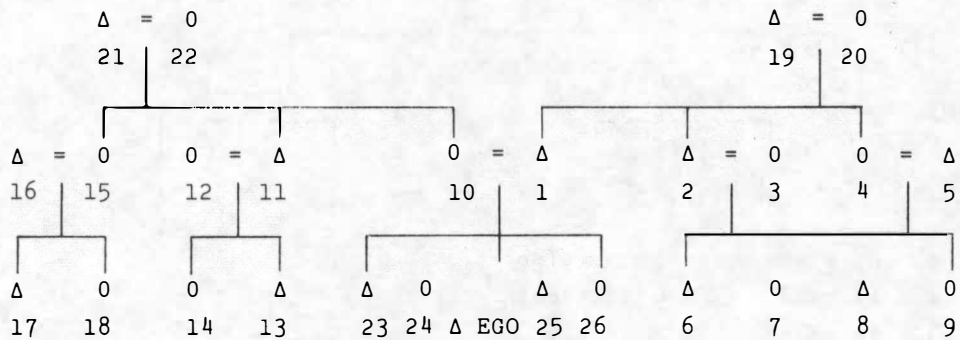
#### D.1. DEDUCTIONS FROM RELATIONSHIP CHARTS

Below is listed a number of charts showing the Kapau relationship system. Only a very cursory study has been made but the charts suggest the following interesting things (several of which seem to show the much lower place accorded to women in Kapau culture):

1. Ego's father's relations (2, 3, 4, 5) each have a separate relationship term, but Ego's mother's sisters (12, 15 - Chart 1) are all qanäi, 'mother', and her brothers, qämqo (11) qänmq\*o (16 - Chart 1). This suggests the father's line is of greater importance than the mother's, so this is probably a patrilineal society.
2. Two names (male and female) for the spouse of Ego's sibling (1, 2 - Chart 4), but none for the sibling of Ego's spouse.
3. Daughter-in-law grandmother, and granddaughter contain the root morpheme -i- 'female' only which indicates they are of little importance in Kapau culture.
4. There is no differentiation made between the grandparents (19-22 - Chart 1) and grandchildren (3-6 - Chart 2); that is, alternate generation levels, two above Ego and two below, are the same.
5. In-law terms appear to be related morphologically to the term for husband.

Δ stands for male, 0 for female; = means 'married to'. All terms listed are prefixed by qa- 3rd P.Sing., so literally mean 'his brother, his wife, etc.'.

D.2. CHART 1: Ego's grandparents, parents, uncles, aunts, cousins, brothers, sisters

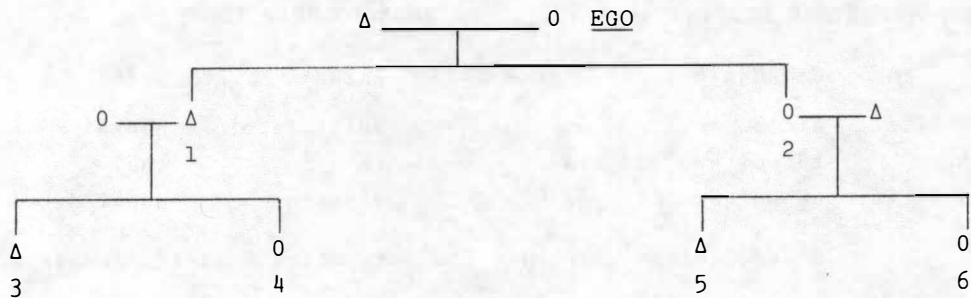


- |                      |                       |                    |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. qänmq*o           | 10. qanäi             | 19. qä'wo (qäwo'o) |
| 2. qänmqo            | 11. qämq*o            | 20. qäi            |
| 3. qanäi             | 12. qanäi             | 21. qä'wo          |
| 4. qayai             | 13. qatawä'o          | 22. qäi            |
| 5. qaenqoyä'o        | 14. qätiyavi          | 23. qatä'o         |
| 6. qainkoä'o, qatä'o | 15. qanäi             | 24. qanäni         |
| 7. qanäpi            | 16. qänmqo            | 25. qainkoä'o      |
| 8. qatawä'o          | 17. qatä'o, qainkoä'o | 26. qanäpi         |
| 9. qätiyavi          | 18. qanäpi, qanäni    |                    |

12 - man = qäiväk\*o

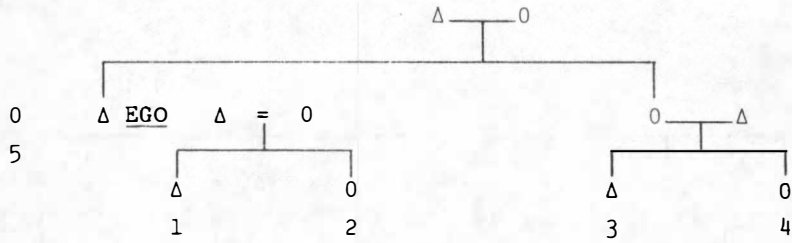
Grandfather's brother is qä'wo(qäwo'o), same as grandfather.

D.3. CHART 2: Ego's grandchildren, husband, sons, daughters



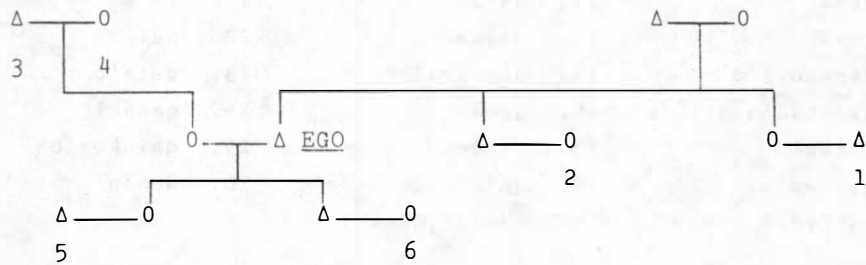
- |                  |                  |              |
|------------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1. qaiiväk*o     | 4. qäi           | 6. qäi       |
| 2. qaime'ä       | 5. qä'wo(qäwo'o) | 7. qaiyänk*o |
| 3. qä'wo(qäwo'o) |                  |              |

## D.4. CHART 3: Ego's nephews, nieces, wife



- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| 1. qaiväk*o | 4. qaime'ä |
| 2. qaime'ä  | 5. qäpai   |
| 3. qaiväk*o |            |

## D.5. CHART 4: Ego's in-laws



- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. qäimp*o   | 4. qanäinkui |
| 2. qatiya'ui | 5. qanäink*o |
| 3. qanäink*o | 6. qäi       |

## D.6. FURTHER LISTING OF 1, 2, 3, P. RELATIONSHIP TERMS

	<i>Grandfather</i>	<i>Grandmother</i>	<i>Father</i>	<i>Mother</i>
1S.Dl.Pl.	äto'o	äti	äpik*o, äpo'o	nänkai
2S.	tä'wo(täwo'o)	täi	tnmq*o	tnäi
3S.Dl.Pl.	qä'wo(qäwo'o)	qäi	qänmq*o	qanäi
	<i>Older Brother</i>	<i>Younger Brother</i>	<i>Older Sister</i>	<i>Younger Sister</i>
	tätik*o, tät*o	nkoä'o	näni	näpi
	titä'o	tinkoä'o	tnäni	tnäpi
	qatä'o	qainkoä'o	qanäni	qanäpi

	<i>Father-in-law</i>	<i>One-Talk (M)</i>	<i>One-Talk (M.Pl.)</i>	<i>One-Talk (F)</i>
1S.Dl.Pl.	näink*o	ntawä'o	ntawakä	nawi
2S.	tnäinko	titawä'o	titawakä	tiyavi
3S.Dl.Pl.	qanäinko	qatawä'o	qutawakä	qätiyavi

*One-Talk (F.Pl.) Aunt (Father's side) Uncle (Mother's side)*

nawi'yä	awinko (awi)	ä'mo (ämo'o)
tiyavi'yä	tiyai	tämq*o
qätiyavi'yä	qayai	qämq*o

<i>Brother-in-law</i>	<i>Sister-in-law</i>	<i>Father-in-law</i>
näimp*o	na'ui	näink*o
timpo'o	tiya'ui	tnäink*o
qäimp*o	qätiya'ui	qanäink*o

<i>Mother-in-law</i>	<i>Son, Nephew</i>	<i>Daughter, Niece</i>
näinkui	niväk*o, ime'ä	ime'ä
tnäinkui	tiväko	time'ä
qanäinkui	qaiväko	qaime'ä

äto saink*o	<i>Great-grandfather</i>
äto sainki	<i>Great-grandmother</i>

Material supplied by Peter Banfield.

## APPENDIX E

### GROUP PRONOUNS

#### E.1. USAGE

In *dual* and *plural* forms, the pronouns can be made more "colourful", expressing more than just plain 'you all' or 'they two'.

These pronouns are for use where they refer to people *related to one another*, as for instance, meeting a father and his son, instead of addressing them just as 'qi' 'you two', you can say qimatängi 'you-father and son'. The first is acceptable but the second is more personal and friendly.

These 'group pronouns' are of necessity only for referring to two or more people within the same relationship and there cannot be any singular forms.

It will be noted below that there is one set of these pronouns used between men, another set used between women or men and women. It needs the presence of just one woman in a group for the change to be made to the 'mixed' pronoun, an indication of the woman's lower rank. A study of these terms reveals that the most important relationships in Kapau are between sibling, parent and child, and siblings-in-law as the sex dichotomy is only expressed in these three (see below).

#### E.2. BROTHER-SISTER GROUP PRONOUNS

##### 1. Brother and Brother

	Stem: -qoä	Subj. Pron.
1DL.	yeqoäi(yäinkoyäi)	(yäi)
2DL.	qeqoängui	(qi) taqoängui (D.A.)
3DL.	aqoä'u	(aqoä'u)
1PL.	naink*onai	(nai)
2PL.	haink*ohen	(hai) (tank*ohen)
3PL.	aqoä	(aqoä)

##### 1A. Sister and Sister or Brother and Sister

	Stem: -isä
	yasäi (D.A.)
	qisäungi (tisäungi)
	isä'u, apiyä'u
	naimpiyänai
	haimpiseän (tampiseän)
	apiyä

## E.3. STRUCTURE

From the above two sets, it can be seen that these group pronouns have a stem plus a prefix and suffix, both of which are some form of the subject person pronoun (often there are some morphophonemic changes, either of stem or affixes), e.g. 1st Dual Subject Pronoun is *yäi*; *yäi* + *qoä* + *yäi* becomes *ye-qoä-i* where the *-yäi-* becomes *ye* before *q* of stem and the 2nd *yäi* becomes *-i*.

## E.4. MEANINGS

These may best be understood by giving some illustrations. Take 2nd plural:

If you meet five people and -

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| a. they are all <i>brothers</i> you use...                      | haink*ohen |
| b. they are all <i>sisters</i> you use...                       | haimpiseän |
| c. they are <i>two brothers</i> and <i>three sisters</i> use... | haimpiseän |
| d. they are <i>four brothers</i> and <i>one sister</i> use...   | haimpiseän |

In other words, it only takes one female in the group to change the pronoun you use from Set 1 (Male Group Pronouns) to Set 1A ('Mixed' or Female Group Pronouns).

## E.5. PARENT AND CHILD GROUP PRONOUNS

## 2. Father and Son

Stem: *mat*

*yäimatiyäi*

*qimatängi* (*tamatängi*)

*amatä'i*

*naimat\*onai*

*haimat\*ohen* (*tamat\*ohen*)

*amato'ä*

2A. Father and Daughter,  
Mother, and Son, Daughter

Stem: *-mp*

*yäimpiyäi*

*qimpängi* (*tampängi*)

*ampä'i*

*naimp\*onai*

*haimp\*ohen* (*tamp\*ohen*)

*ampo'ä*

In 2 and 2A we have introduced another form, given in parentheses. These are used when calling out to the people you are referring to, so we can name them 'Calling' Pronouns. They are necessarily just in the second number, and they differ from the normal form, by a change of prefix, the prefix always beginning with a *t-* prefix, meaning 'you'.

## E.6. IN-LAW GROUP PRONOUNS

3. Brother-in-law and  
Brother-in-law

Stem: -empati

yempatiyäi  
 qempatängi (tempatängi)  
 empatä'i  
 nempat\*onai  
 hempat\*ohen (tempat\*ohen)  
 empato'ä

3A. Brother-in-law and  
Sister-in-law, Sister-in-  
law and Sister-in-law

Stem: -e'ut

ye'utiyäi  
 qe'utängi (te'utängi)  
 e'utä'i  
 ne'ut\*onai  
 he'ut\*ohen (te'ut\*ohen)  
 e'uto'ä

## E.7. FATHER-IN-LAW AND SON-IN-LAW GROUP PRONOUNS

Stem: -enat

yenatiyäi  
 qenatängi (tenatängi)  
 enatä'i  
 net\*onai  
 henat\*ohen (tenat\*ohen)  
 enato'ä

## E.8. GRANDPARENTS AND GRANDCHILD GROUP PRONOUNS

Grandfather and Grandson, Granddaughter,  
 Grandmother and Grandson, Granddaughter

Stem: -et

yetiyäi  
 qetängi (tetängi)  
 etä'i  
 net\*onai  
 het\*ohen (tet\*ohen)  
 eto'ä

## E.9. SPOUSE GROUP PRONOUNS

Man and Wife (or Wives)

- 1DL. yäi, yasäi (Second set has only recently come into  
 2DL. qi, qisäungi usage. It was not used before.)  
 3DL. eä'u, isä'u  
 1PL. nai, naimpiyänai  
 2PL. hai, haimpiseän  
 3PL. e'uyä, apiyä

NOTE: When speaking of one's own or one's hearer's relationship no distinction is made between a spouse and a sibling relationship. But when speaking of the other person's relationship it is specified whether the relationship is sibling or spouse.

Material supplied by Peter Banfield.

## APPENDIX F

### SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION CONCERNING CERTAIN WORDS

F.1. inä, -inä, -nä 'TIME' MORPHEME MEANING *when; then; later; before; now.*

This morpheme has three different functions and falls into three different word classes.

F.1.1. ADVERB. inä 'later', 'before', 'now'

Occurs before the verb in regular adverb position. When it occurs with a verb in the Future Tense it means 'later'. When it occurs with a verb in the Past Tense it means 'before'. When it occurs with a verb in the Present Tense it means 'now', e.g.

INÄ pat\*a ti *He will come later.*

INÄ qäp\*a ti *He came before.*

INÄ ya hu *Now move!*

finä 'another time' may substitute for inä.

tinä 'now, this time'

hna inä 'long time ago'

'hna 'yet'.

F.1.2. CONJUNCTION. inä 'then'

Occurs between two clauses linking them, e.g.

aqo weäp\*ängotnä INÄ wimqa ti *When he comes down THEN I'll give it to him.*

yoän aqo qata nuwiya INÄ *John listened to Jesus and THEN baptized Him.*

Yesusu'oi wäsi quwiyänqa ti  
...pane'a INÄ qutanqa ti *...THEN he spoke to them.*

## F.1.3. CLITIC. -inä, -nä 'when', 'after'

Occurs chiefly as a verb suffix but a few examples have been found of -inä suffixed to nouns and adjectives, e.g.

ni hna ime'ä -INÄ qäpanqa ti I came WHEN I was still a child.

ni hna quyv'a-inä qäpanqa ti I came WHEN I was still very small.

In the above constructions hna 'yet' appears to be obligatory (i.e. must also occur). Note hna inä means 'a long time ago'. -inä also occurs in most adverbs of time (q.v.), e.g.

finä 'sometime'

änkinä 'yesterday, tomorrow'

yangäinä 'long time ago, etc.'

When -inä or -nä occurs as a suffixial verb morpheme it means 'when'. It would appear that inä was once always a free form, but because of heavy pressure of verb suffixation, the tendency now is to attach it to the verb form, e.g. yä'ängot\*inä 'when he having done' appears to be yä'ängot\*a + inä with final -a of verb form lost. Tom has heard this form many times, but our informant Haywota will not have it. He says yä'ängotnä where it appears that -nä is a shortened form of -inä.

aqo weäp\*ängotnä wimqa ti When he comes I'll give it to him.

Quite often inä as a conjunction 'then' occurs following such a construction as the above (see first example in 2 above).

ta nikängINÄ hope'a hewa hava When you've built the fire peel the  
ha'i kaukau!

ha ningINÄ INÄ ptna WHEN you've done that, THEN come!

It seems that -inä suffixed to a Past Tense means 'after', and when suffixed to a Future Tense means 'when', e.g.

noeäpnmginä (Immediate Future) When I come, etc.

noeäpnginä ( " " )

noeäpainä ( " " )

noeäpä'inä ( " " )

noeäphinginä ( " " )

noeäphinginä ( " " )

noeäpä'ina ( " " )

noeäphunginä ( " " )

noeäphunginä ( " " )

qätmamqinä (Future)

qätmaut\*inä ( " )

qätëmotinä	(Future)	When I come, etc.
qätëmailtoinä	( " )	
qätëmhaitinä	( " )	
qätëmhaitinä	( " )	
qätëmoätöinä	( " )	
qätëmhautinä	( " )	
qätëmhautinä	( " )	
nu'wä'ninä	(Past)	
nu'wänginä	( " )	
nu'wä'ninä	( " )	
nu'wä'noinä	( " )	
nu'wänginä	( " )	
nu'wänginä	( " )	
nu'wä'noinä	( " )	
nu'wänguwinä	( " )	
nu'wänguwinä	( " )	

F.2. nanga 'partaking of the nature of; like; partly'. manga 'emphasising quality of'

1.3.4. discussed these two forms as suffixes to adjectives. In the following sentences (several of which are idiomatic) they appear to be independent words, not suffixes.

peso na'a NANGA ti	The pencil is more 'biggish'.
hiviyat*a mä. qomä hiviyata	It is not yellow; it's only yellowish.
NANGA ti	
qoä NANGA'l qoe	It is lower down (lit. 'it lies (on) ground-like').
mheka hamät*a NANGA ti	Pine is more reddish.
nti yä'ä MANGA qäpknga	Lit. 'Oh, you're coming' - a form of greeting.
ta nqa MANGA ti	This is probably mine.

F.3. COMPARISON OF fi 'some' AND fi 'a female one, or person'

F.3.1. fi 'some', 'a' is a free form comprising one morpheme with an indefinite meaning of 'some' or 'a' as opposed to the specific meaning of 'the'.

nanqa fi nTÄPu Give me a (or some) banana(s)!

F.3.2. *fi* meaning a 'female person' is also a free form but it is comprised of two morphemes:

*f* 'person', 'one', 'a'  
*i* 'a female person, another woman'

Compare the following:

*aqo* 'he, him, the he or male one'    *i* 'she, her, the she or female one'  
*taqo* 'this he'    *ti* 'this female one'  
*fanqo* (*haqo*, *hanqo*) 'a he, another he'    *fi*, *hi* 'a female one'

*äpaka FI QIYAP\*I* 'A woman is coming'.

Compare: *äpaka TI WI* 'Give it to this woman!'  
           *i WI* 'Give it to her!'

NOTE: It is possible to say *wi* 'Give it to her!' in isolation, but in a full sentence it must be *i wi*.

## APPENDIX G

### VARIOUS IDIOMS

#### G.1. qaingo -in- 'to dislike' (V.)

The only occurrence of this word is with the -in- 'think' verb in the following construction:

qaingo qani'ni *'I don't like it.'*

#### G.2. qainga 'different, another, another kind'

Does not appear to be related to qaingo:

aqonga amä'ä qainga ti *'He is a different kind of man.' (as from another tribe)*

#### G.3. qani'ni 'it is doing to me'

Occurs to express the thought of human emotions and physical needs which arise as something outside of the person, something that can't be helped, as thirst, amusement, dislike, remembrance.

quno qani'ni	<i>I've just thought of it. (as of sudden remembrance)</i>
e'ä'ma qani'ni	<i>I want water.</i>
tpe'a qani'ni	<i>I want to laugh.</i>
setänga aqoi'na qaingo qani'ni	<i>I don't like Satan (lit. 'Satan him-concerning dislike it-is-doing-to-me').</i>

#### G.4. mta i 'to be hungry'

mta qani'i	<i>I'm hungry.</i>
mta quwi'i	<i>He's hungry.</i>
mta'ma qoe	<i>He's lying there because he's hungry.</i>
mta'ma qi'i	<i>He is suffering hunger. (said of a man who is going about acting as if he's hungry)</i>

hawai, hope'a mhe'ä qiya. nai    *No, we have no kaukau; we are living*  
 mta'ma qapmeängo                      *in a state of hunger.*

G.5. yanga 'strong'

(yanga as a Noun means 'leg' or 'bone'; there may be some connection of meaning.)

yanga qa'a'ni	<i>It is tough. (as firewood that won't break)</i>
aqo yanga maqno ti	<i>He is a strong man.</i>
yanga ha'an	<i>Be strong, resist!</i>
aqo yanga qa'a'ni	<i>He is obstinate, stubborn, or resisting.</i>
yi yanga hi	<i>Pull back the arrow and aim!</i>

G.6. qamai'ya 'struggling to do something, having a hard time doing it'

The stem of this verb is mai- which seems to have something to do with handling things. It is used for *playing with a ball, or baby*. The suffix is -'a. The expression has been found with the three nouns listed below:

hānga	'weight'	qamai'ya	<i>I'm having a hard time to lift, move it.</i>
yanga	'strength'	"	<i>I'm having a hard time to break, loosen, move it.</i>
hawawa	'bit'	"	<i>I'm having a hard time to bite it.</i>

G.7. mp#a -i- 'buy and sell'

It is not clear when mpa -i- means 'buy' and when 'sell' except 'sell' often takes the Objective Prefixes (what one is going to buy often has the -'ma suffix).

iva'ma häka mpa yana	<i>He is going to sell salt for a bark cape.</i>
nai hope'a mpa yāno qoe'o	<i>We are going to sell kaukau to Master</i>
matä patāngo'oi	<i>Frank.</i>
nai näi'ma MPA YÄNO qoe'o	<i>We are going to buy a knife.</i>

G.8. -tan 'to measure up, level' (hard to define meaning)

waimpoka tha TANQA ti	<i>The fish is this big. (of THIS measurement - showing with hands)</i>
äwa'i TANQA hayu	<i>Only fill it up to the middle (lit. 'middle measure pour it')!</i>

APPENDIX H

SUPPLEMENTARY SENTENCES

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. apu'na tänTl'in                                     | <i>Is that the part (of the sentence<br/>you are talking about)?</i> |
| 2. ät*a hmpu han                                       | <i>Drink some more!</i>  |
| 3. e'ä me'ä hmpu qina                                  | <i>There's a little water in it.</i>                                 |
| 4. äta hmpu namä napn ta'i hai                         | <i>You bring some more and put it here!</i>                          |
| 5. ta wanqapu qita                                     | <i>A little fire is burning.</i>                                     |
| 6. me'äpiyä hatawi                                     | <i>Cut the firewood small!</i>                                       |
| 7. sospä'na wanqapi hamau                              | <i>Put it in the small saucepan!</i>                                 |
| 8. i hna mtangapu ti                                   | <i>She's still a small child.</i>                                    |
| 9. NOTE: apuna tä seems to<br>mean . . . . .           | <i>Is that all there is?</i>   |
| 10. qamqaminqinä noeäpata hope'a<br>mamä qoeäpmanqa ti | <i>When he came down each day he<br/>brought kaukau.</i>             |
| 11. noeäpatä'änga anga wamnga<br>awa yät*o ti          | <i>If we come down every day, we will<br/>be able to work.</i>       |
| 12. aqa wäna ut*ä'na qaingo<br>wi'näni nu'ma qap*a     | <i>I saw he didn't want to and I<br/>came.</i>                       |

## APPENDIX I

The following tables give some idea of how the Reflexive is expressed in Kapau:

nqa	no	nqa	nona	<i>I myself, only myself</i>
nta	nto	nta	ntona	<i>You " yourself</i>
aqoi'ya	qaiva	aqoi'ya	qaivana	<i>He " himself</i>
ye'ä	yäiva	ye'ä	yäivana	<i>We (Dl.) " ourselves</i>
qi'ya	qiva	qi'ya	qivana	<i>You (Dl.) " yourselves</i>
aqoä'u'ya	qiva	aqoä'u'ya	qivana	<i>They (Dl.) " themselves</i>
nai'ya	naiva	nai'ya	naivana	<i>We (Pl.) " ourselves</i>
hai'ya	haiva	hai'ya	haivana	<i>You (Pl.) " yourselves</i>
aqoäi'ya	quiva	aqoäi'ya	quivana	<i>They (Pl.) " themselves</i>

\* \* \*

### SPECIAL NOTE

*Glottal stop* (') often occurs simultaneously with another stop (p, t, k, q) and it is very difficult to hear.

EXAMPLES:   qoapa   '*many*'                   mta   '*hair*'  
                   qoap'a   '*star*'                   mt'a   '*quail*'

Even though it is phonemic and is the only difference between some words, for practical reasons these glottals are not being written in reading materials for natives.

However, in this Grammar an asterisk (\*) is being placed by the stop to alert the missionary to the presence of the glottal. Sometimes the asterisk is placed on the proper stop. On other words, those which have only one stop, the asterisk is placed at the beginning of the word. In verb declension lists where every form in that tense has a glottal stop, the asterisk is placed on the first word in the list.